

Math for Non-Math Majors

Archived study guides

These archived materials are no longer updated. This archive was exported from a saved copy of these guides.

Export date: 2026-10-05T19:26:30.244Z

Contents

Unit 1 – Sets - 5 guides

Unit 2 – Logic - 7 guides

Unit 3 – Number Systems and Theory - 11 guides

Unit 4 – Number Systems and Calculations - 5 guides

Unit 5 – Algebra - 11 guides

Unit 6 – Money Management - 13 guides

Unit 7 – Probability - 11 guides

Unit 8 – Statistics - 8 guides

Unit 9 – Metric System Basics - 5 guides

Unit 10 – Geometry - 8 guides

Unit 11 – Voting and Apportionment in Mathematics - 5 guides

Unit 12 – Graph Theory - 10 guides

Unit 13 – Math and... - 5 guides

Unit 1 – Sets

1.1 Basic Set Concepts

Set theory forms the foundation of mathematical reasoning. It's all about organizing and categorizing objects into collections called sets. Understanding sets helps us make sense of relationships between different groups of things.

Sets can be finite or infinite, equal or equivalent. We use special symbols and notations to describe sets and their relationships. These concepts are crucial for solving problems in math and beyond.

Fundamentals of Set Theory

Components of sets

- A set is a well-defined collection of distinct objects
- Objects in a set are called elements or members
- Sets can be represented using the roster method or set-builder notation
- Roster method lists all elements within curly braces $\{ \}$ (1, 2, 3, 4, 5)
- Set-builder notation describes the properties of elements using a variable and a condition $\{x \mid x \text{ is a positive integer less than } 6\}$
- Sets are typically denoted using uppercase letters, while elements are represented by lowercase letters
- The symbol $\in$ denotes membership in a set
- If $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$, then $1 \in A$ (read as "1 is an element of set A")
- The empty set, denoted by $\{ \}$ or $\emptyset$, contains no elements
- Empty set is a subset of every set, including itself
- The universal set, denoted by U , contains all possible elements under consideration for a given context

Finite vs infinite sets

- Sets can be classified as finite or infinite based on the number of elements they contain
- Finite sets have a specific number of elements (a, b, c, d)
- Infinite sets have an endless number of elements (1, 2, 3, 4, ...)
- The number of elements in a set is called its cardinality, denoted by $|A|$ for a set A
- For finite sets, the cardinality is the total number of elements
- If $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, then $|A| = 4$
- For infinite sets, the cardinality is denoted by $\aleph_0$ (aleph-null) or ∞ (infinity)
- If $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}$, then $|B| = \aleph_0$ or $|B| = \infty$

- Countable sets have a one-to-one correspondence with the set of natural numbers
- Examples of countable sets: integers, rational numbers
- Uncountable sets have a cardinality greater than the set of natural numbers
- Example of an uncountable set: real numbers

Equal vs equivalent sets

- Two sets are equal if they contain exactly the same elements
- Order and repetition of elements do not matter in set equality
- $\{1, 2, 3\} = \{3, 2, 1\} = \{1, 2, 2, 3\}$
- Real-world example: A set of students in a class remains equal regardless of their seating arrangement or if their names are listed multiple times
- Two sets are equivalent if they have the same cardinality (number of elements)
- Equivalent sets can have different elements as long as the number of elements is the same
- $\{a, b, c\}$ and $\{1, 2, 3\}$ are equivalent sets because they both have 3 elements
- Real-world example: A set of 20 apples and a set of 20 oranges are equivalent sets, even though they contain different types of fruit
- Equal sets are always equivalent, but equivalent sets may not be equal
- $\{1, 2, 3\}$ and $\{a, b, c\}$ are equivalent but not equal

Set Operations and Relationships

- Union of two sets A and B, denoted by $A \cup B$, is the set of all elements that belong to either A or B or both
- Intersection of two sets A and B, denoted by $A \cap B$, is the set of all elements that belong to both A and B
- The power set of a set A, denoted by $P(A)$, is the set of all possible subsets of A, including the empty set and A itself
- Venn diagrams are visual representations used to illustrate relationships between sets, showing overlaps and distinctions between different sets

1.2 Subsets

Set theory is all about organizing things into groups. It's like sorting your stuff into boxes, where each box is a set. We use special symbols to show what's in each set and how they relate to each other.

Subsets are like mini-groups within bigger groups. For example, apples are a subset of fruits. We can figure out how many subsets a group has and compare different groups to see if they're the same size.

Set Theory and Subsets

Set Theory Fundamentals

- Set theory is the mathematical study of collections of objects

- Set notation uses curly braces to enclose elements: $\{1, 2, 3\}$
- Set membership is denoted by $\in$ (element of) or $\notin$ (not an element of)
- Set equality occurs when two sets have exactly the same elements
- Set operations include union, intersection, and complement

Subsets and proper subsets

- A subset contains some or all elements of another set
- If set A is a subset of set B, every element in A is also in B (fruits and apples)
- Denoted as $A \subseteq B$
- Proper subset contains some, but not all, elements of the original set
- Denoted as $A \subset B$ (even numbers and natural numbers)
- Empty set has no elements, denoted as $\emptyset$ or $\{\}$
- The empty set is a subset of every set, including itself (universal subset)

Calculating total subsets

- The number of subsets for a set with n elements is 2^n
- Includes the empty set and the set itself
- A set with 3 elements, $\{a, b, c\}$, has $2^3 = 8$ subsets
- Subsets: $\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}$
- A set with 4 elements, $\{w, x, y, z\}$, has $2^4 = 16$ subsets
- Follows the pattern of doubling the number of subsets for each additional element

Set equivalence by cardinality

- Cardinality is the number of elements in a set
- Denoted as $|A|$ for set A (size or magnitude)
- Two sets are equivalent if they have the same cardinality
- If $|A| = |B|$, then A and B are equivalent (same number of elements)
- Equivalent sets can have different elements but the same number of elements
- $\{a, b, c\}$ and $\{1, 2, 3\}$ are equivalent sets (both have cardinality of 3)
- $\{\text{dog, cat, bird}\}$ and $\{\text{red, blue, green}\}$ are equivalent (same size, different elements)

1.3 Understanding Venn Diagrams

Venn diagrams are a visual tool for understanding set relationships. They use overlapping circles to show how different groups of things relate, making complex ideas easier to grasp. This helps us see connections between sets at a glance.

These diagrams are super useful in many areas, from math to everyday life. They can show subsets, disjoint sets, intersections, and unions, helping us organize information and solve problems involving logical relationships more easily.

Venn Diagrams

Interpretation of Venn diagrams

- Venn diagrams use overlapping circles to represent sets and their relationships
- Each circle represents a distinct set (fruits, vegetables)
- The overlapping region between circles represents elements that belong to both sets (tomatoes, avocados)
- The area outside all circles represents elements that do not belong to any of the sets (rocks, cars)
- Venn diagrams can illustrate various set relationships
- Subset: one circle completely inside another circle (all squares are rectangles)
- Disjoint sets: circles that do not overlap (cats, dogs)
- Intersection: the overlapping region between circles (students who play both soccer and basketball)
- Union: all elements in all circles combined (all animals in a zoo)
- Venn diagrams are a powerful visualization tool for understanding complex relationships between sets

Creation of Venn diagrams

- Subset relationship
- Set A is a subset of set B if all elements of A are also elements of B
- Represented by drawing circle A completely inside circle B (all tigers are mammals)
- Disjoint sets
- Sets are disjoint if they have no elements in common
- Represented by drawing circles that do not overlap (even numbers, odd numbers)
- Complement relationship
- The complement of set A, denoted as A' , consists of all elements in the universal set that are not in A
- Represented by the area outside circle A but inside the universal set rectangle (non-renewable energy sources in the set of all energy sources)

Complements in universal sets

- The universal set, often denoted as U, contains all elements under consideration
- Typically represented by a rectangle enclosing all other sets (all animals on Earth)
- The complement of a set A, denoted as A' , consists of all elements in the universal set that are not in A
- $A' = \{x \in U | x \notin A\}$

- In a Venn diagram, the complement of a set is represented by the area outside the set's circle but inside the universal set rectangle
- If U represents all students in a school and A represents students who play sports, then A' represents students who do not play sports
- Examples 1. If $U = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ and $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$, then $A' = \{4, 5\}$ 2. If $U = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$ and $B = \{b, d\}$, then $B' = \{a, c, e\}$

Foundations and Applications

- Venn diagrams are rooted in set theory, a branch of mathematical logic
- They provide a visual representation of Boolean algebra operations
- Each element in a Venn diagram belongs to one or more sets, illustrating set membership
- Venn diagrams are widely used in various fields to analyze and solve problems involving logical relationships

1.4 Set Operations with Two Sets

Set operations are the building blocks of mathematical logic. They help us understand how different groups of things relate to each other. Intersection and union are two key operations that show us what elements sets have in common or combined.

These operations connect directly to everyday thinking. When we use "and" or "or" in our language, we're actually using set logic. Understanding set operations helps us make sense of complex relationships and solve real-world problems involving groups and categories.

Set Operations with Two Sets

Intersection and union of sets

- Intersection of two sets A and B , denoted as $A \cap B$, represents the set of elements that are common to both sets A and B
- In set notation, the intersection is written as $A \cap B = \{x | x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\}$, which means the set of all elements x such that x belongs to both A and B
- In a Venn diagram, the intersection is visually represented by the overlapping region of the two sets (shaded area where circles overlap)
- Elements in this overlapping region satisfy the condition of being in both sets simultaneously
- Union of two sets A and B , denoted as $A \cup B$, represents the set of elements that belong to either set A or set B , or both sets
- In set notation, the union is written as $A \cup B = \{x | x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}$, which means the set of all elements x such that x belongs to either A or B , or both
- In a Venn diagram, the union is visually represented by the entire region enclosed by both sets (total shaded area of both circles)
- Elements in this combined region satisfy the condition of being in at least one of the sets

- Two sets are considered disjoint if their intersection is empty, meaning they have no elements in common

"AND" and "OR" in set operations

- "AND" logic directly corresponds to the concept of intersection of sets, where elements must satisfy multiple conditions simultaneously
- Example: The set of students who are both math majors AND computer science majors (must be enrolled in both programs)
- Elements in the intersection of sets A and B must belong to both A AND B
- "OR" logic directly corresponds to the concept of union of sets, where elements can satisfy any one of the given conditions
- Example: The set of people who have either a dog OR a cat as a pet (can have one, the other, or both)
- Elements in the union of sets A and B can belong to either A OR B, or both
- Real-world scenarios often involve combinations of "AND" and "OR" logic to define specific criteria or conditions
- Example: The set of employees who have worked at a company for more than 5 years AND have a master's degree OR a Ph.D. (must meet tenure requirement and have either graduate degree)
- Combining set operations allows for more complex and precise definitions of sets based on multiple attributes

Cardinality of set combinations

- Cardinality of a set, denoted as $|A|$ for set A, represents the number of distinct elements contained within the set
- Finite sets have a specific number of elements, while infinite sets have an unlimited number of elements
- Cardinality of the intersection of two sets A and B, denoted as $|A \cap B|$, represents the number of elements that are common to both sets
- Determined by counting the elements in the overlapping region of a Venn diagram where the two sets intersect
- Formula: $|A \cap B|$ = number of elements in the overlapping region
- Cardinality of the union of two sets A and B, denoted as $|A \cup B|$, represents the total number of elements that belong to either set A or set B, or both sets
- Determined by counting the elements in the entire region enclosed by both sets in a Venn diagram, while subtracting the overlapping elements to avoid double-counting
- Formula: $|A \cup B| = |A| + |B| - |A \cap B|$, which adds the individual set cardinalities and subtracts the intersection cardinality to account for overlapping elements
- Cardinality formulas and Venn diagrams provide a way to quantify and visualize the relationships between sets and their combinations

Additional Set Operations

- Complement of a set A , denoted as A' , represents all elements in the universal set that are not in A
- Set difference between sets A and B , denoted as $A - B$, represents elements in A that are not in B
- Symmetric difference of sets A and B , denoted as $A \triangle B$, represents elements in either A or B , but not in both
- Power set of a set A , denoted as $P(A)$, is the set of all possible subsets of A , including the empty set and A itself

1.5 Set Operations with Three Sets

Set operations with three sets expand on basic set theory concepts. They allow us to analyze more complex relationships between groups of elements. Understanding these operations is crucial for solving real-world problems involving multiple categories or classifications.

Venn diagrams with three overlapping circles visually represent these relationships. By counting elements in different regions and applying set operations, we can solve problems involving multiple sets. This skill is valuable in fields like data analysis and decision-making.

Set Operations with Three Sets

Three-set Venn diagrams

- Visually represent relationships between three sets using overlapping circles labeled Set A , Set B , and Set C
- Overlapping regions indicate elements belonging to multiple sets
- $A \cap B \cap C$ represents elements in all three sets
- $A \cap B$ represents elements in both Set A and Set B , but not Set C (bananas and apples)
- $A \cap C$ represents elements in both Set A and Set C , but not Set B (bananas and oranges)
- $B \cap C$ represents elements in both Set B and Set C , but not Set A (apples and oranges)
- Non-overlapping regions represent elements exclusive to a single set
- $A - (B \cup C)$ represents elements only in Set A (pineapples)
- $B - (A \cup C)$ represents elements only in Set B (pears)
- $C - (A \cup B)$ represents elements only in Set C (grapefruits)

Element counting in Venn diagrams

- Determine the number of elements (cardinality) in each region using given information and set operations
- Sum of all regions equals the total number of elements in the universal set
- Apply Addition Principle: If two sets have no common elements, their union's element count is the sum of their individual element counts

- Apply Subtraction Principle: If set A is a subset of set B, the number of elements in set B not in set A is the difference between their element counts
- Example: Set A (10 elements), Set B (8 elements), Set C (6 elements), $A \cap B$ (4 elements), $A \cap C$ (3 elements), $B \cap C$ (2 elements), $A \cap B \cap C$ (1 element) 1. $A - (B \cup C)$: $10 - (4 + 3 - 1) = 4$ elements 2. $B - (A \cup C)$: $8 - (4 + 2 - 1) = 3$ elements 3. $C - (A \cup B)$: $6 - (3 + 2 - 1) = 2$ elements

Set operations for three sets

- Union ($\cup$): Elements belonging to at least one of the sets A, B, or C
- $A \cup B \cup C = \{x | x \in A \text{ or } x \in B \text{ or } x \in C\}$ (fruits, vegetables, or grains)
- Intersection ($\cap$): Elements common to all three sets A, B, and C
- $A \cap B \cap C = \{x | x \in A \text{ and } x \in B \text{ and } x \in C\}$ (foods that are red, round, and sweet)
- Complement (c or $'$): Elements in the universal set U that are not in set A
- $A^c = \{x | x \in U \text{ and } x \notin A\}$ (all items that are not fruits)
- Difference ($-$): Elements in set A that are not in set B
- $A - B = \{x | x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B\}$ (fruits that are not citrus)
- Combine set operations to create complex expressions and solve problems involving three sets ($(A \cup B) \cap C$: items that are either fruits or vegetables, and also grains)

Additional Set Theory Concepts

- Set theory provides a foundation for understanding relationships between sets and their elements
- Disjoint sets are sets that have no elements in common ($A \cap B = \emptyset$)
- De Morgan's laws describe the relationship between set operations:
 - $(A \cup B)' = A' \cap B'$
 - $(A \cap B)' = A' \cup B'$

Unit 2 – Logic

2.1 Statements and Quantifiers

Logical statements form the foundation of mathematical reasoning. They're declarative sentences that are either true or false, but never both. Identifying and analyzing these statements helps you build arguments, evaluate claims, and solve logic problems.

Logical connectives allow us to combine simple statements into more complex ones. By using symbols like $\wedge$ (and), $\vee$ (or), and $\rightarrow$ (if-then), we can create compound statements and explore their truth values using truth tables.

Logical Statements and Truth Values

Identify logical statements and their truth values in everyday language and symbolic form

- Logical statements are declarative sentences that are either true or false, but not both
- "The sky is blue" is a logical statement because it can be either true or false (example)
- "What time is it?" is not a logical statement because it is a question, not a declarative sentence (non-example)
- Represent logical statements using symbols
- Use lowercase letters (p , q , r) to represent simple statements
- Combine simple statements into compound statements using logical connectives ($\wedge$, $\vee$, $\neg$, $\rightarrow$, $\leftrightarrow$)
- Determine the truth value of a logical statement, which is either true (T) or false (F)
- Simple statements' truth values are determined by their correspondence to reality
- Compound statements' truth values depend on the truth values of their component statements and the logical connectives used
- Use truth tables to systematically analyze the truth values of compound statements

Negation of simple statements

- Negation forms a new statement that is true when the original statement is false, and false when the original statement is true
- Denote the negation of a simple statement P by $\neg P$, read as "not P "
- If P is "The sky is blue," then $\neg P$ is "The sky is not blue" (example)
- Form the negation of a compound statement by negating each component statement and replacing the logical connectives with their negations
- The negation of $P \wedge Q$ is $\neg P \vee \neg Q$ (example)
- Express the quantity or extent of a statement's subject using quantifiers

- Read the universal quantifier $\forall$ as "for all" or "for every," indicating that a statement holds for every element in a set
- $\forall x(x > 0)$ is read as "for all x , x is greater than 0" (example)
- Read the existential quantifier $\exists$ as "there exists" or "for some," indicating that a statement holds for at least one element in a set
- $\exists x(x < 0)$ is read as "there exists an x such that x is less than 0" (example)
- Negate a quantified statement by changing the quantifier and negating the predicate
- The negation of $\forall x P(x)$ is $\exists x \neg P(x)$
- The negation of "All dogs are friendly" is "There exists a dog that is not friendly" (example)
- The negation of $\exists x P(x)$ is $\forall x \neg P(x)$
- The negation of "Some cats are black" is "All cats are not black" (example)

Construction of inductive arguments

- Inductive arguments use specific examples or premises to draw a general conclusion
- Premises provide evidence or support for the conclusion but do not guarantee its truth
- The conclusion is a generalization that goes beyond the specific examples in the premises
- Use quantifiers in the premises and conclusion of an inductive argument
- Premises may use the existential quantifier to provide specific examples
- "Dog 1 is friendly," "Dog 2 is friendly," "Dog 3 is friendly" (example)
- The conclusion may use the universal quantifier to make a generalization
- "All dogs are friendly" (example)
- Evaluate the strength of an inductive argument based on the quality and quantity of the premises
- More diverse and representative examples in the premises strengthen the argument
- More examples in the premises strengthen the argument
- Classify inductive arguments as strong or weak, not valid or invalid
- Strong inductive arguments have a high probability of a true conclusion given true premises
- Weak inductive arguments have a low probability of a true conclusion given true premises

Logical Connectives and Compound Statements

- Conditional statements (if-then statements) express a relationship between two statements
- The statement "If p , then q " is denoted as $p \rightarrow q$
- The truth value of a conditional statement is false only when the antecedent (p) is true and the consequent (q) is false
- Biconditional statements (if and only if statements) express a two-way relationship between statements

- The statement "p if and only if q" is denoted as $p \leftrightarrow q$
- A biconditional statement is true when both components have the same truth value
- Analyze compound statements using predicate logic to determine their logical properties
- A tautology is a compound statement that is always true, regardless of the truth values of its components
- A contradiction is a compound statement that is always false, regardless of the truth values of its components

2.2 Compound Statements

Logical connectives combine simple statements into compound statements. Words like "and," "or," and "if-then" create more complex logical relationships and make it possible to test when a statement is true or false.

Logical connectives help with analyzing arguments, solving problems, and making decisions. This guide covers how to translate between words and symbols, use the order of operations for logical statements, and build compound statements.

Logical Connectives and Compound Statements

Translation of compound statements

- Combine simple statements into compound statements using logical connectives
- Conjunction ($\wedge$) joins statements with "and" (both must be true for the compound statement to be true)
- Disjunction ($\vee$) joins statements with "or" (at least one must be true for the compound statement to be true)
- Conditional ($\rightarrow$) creates an "if-then" relationship (if the first statement is true, then the second statement must be true)
- Biconditional ($\leftrightarrow$) creates an "if and only if" relationship (both statements must have the same truth value)
- Negation ($\neg$) reverses the truth value of a statement
- Translate compound statements between words and symbols
- "The sky is blue and the grass is green" = $P \wedge Q$ (P = "The sky is blue", Q = "The grass is green")
- "I will have coffee or tea" = $R \vee S$ (R = "I will have coffee", S = "I will have tea")
- "If it snows, then the roads will be slippery" = $t \rightarrow u$ (t = "It snows", u = "The roads will be slippery")
- "A number is prime if and only if it has exactly two factors" = $V \leftrightarrow W$ (V = "A number is prime", W = "A number has exactly two factors")

Dominance of logical connectives

- Apply the order of operations when evaluating compound logical statements 1. Negation ($\neg$) has the highest precedence 2. Conjunction ($\wedge$) has the second-highest precedence 3. Disjunction ($\vee$) has the third-highest precedence 4. Conditional ($\rightarrow$) has the fourth-highest precedence 5. Biconditional ($\leftrightarrow$) has the lowest precedence

- Use parentheses to override the default order of operations
- $p \vee q \wedge \neg r$ is evaluated as $p \vee (q \wedge (\neg r))$ due to the dominance of logical connectives

Construction of complex logical relationships

- Build compound statements using conjunctions, disjunctions, conditionals, and biconditionals
- Conjunctions (AND) require both components to be true for the compound statement to be true
- "I will buy a shirt and a pair of pants" = $S \wedge P$ (S = "I will buy a shirt", P = "I will buy a pair of pants")
- Disjunctions (OR) require at least one component to be true for the compound statement to be true
- "I will watch a movie or read a book" = $m \vee b$ (m = "I will watch a movie", b = "I will read a book")
- Conditionals (IF-THEN) establish a relationship where the truth of the second component depends on the truth of the first component
- "If I save enough money, then I will go on vacation" = $S \rightarrow V$ (S = "I save enough money", V = "I will go on vacation")
- Biconditionals (IF AND ONLY IF) establish a relationship where both components must have the same truth value
- "A shape is a square if and only if it has four equal sides and four right angles" = $q \leftrightarrow r$ (q = "A shape is a square", r = "A shape has four equal sides and four right angles")

Propositional Logic and Boolean Algebra

- Propositional logic deals with the study of logical propositions and their relationships
- Boolean algebra provides a mathematical framework for working with logical expressions
- Logical operators (such as AND, OR, NOT) are used to combine and manipulate propositions
- Truth values (true or false) are assigned to propositions in propositional logic
- Logical equivalence occurs when two logical expressions always have the same truth value

2.3 Constructing Truth Tables

Truth tables are powerful tools for analyzing compound statements in logic. They help us understand how different combinations of simple statements affect the overall truth of complex ones. By listing all possible outcomes, we can easily spot patterns and make sound logical conclusions.

Mastering truth tables is crucial for grasping the foundations of logical reasoning. They're not just abstract concepts – they're practical tools for evaluating arguments, making decisions, and solving real-world problems. Understanding truth tables opens doors to clearer thinking in many areas of life.

Truth Tables and Compound Statements

Truth tables for compound statements

- A truth table exhaustively lists all possible combinations of truth values for component statements in a compound statement

- Determines the truth value of the entire compound statement for each combination of component truth values
- Negation ($\neg$) reverses the truth value of a statement
- P : "The sky is blue", $\neg P$: "The sky is not blue"
- If P is true, $\neg P$ is false and vice versa
- Conjunction ($\wedge$) combines two statements with "and", requiring both to be true for the compound statement to be true
- P : "I have a dog", Q : "I have a cat", $P \wedge Q$: "I have a dog and I have a cat"
- $P \wedge Q$ is true only when both P and Q are true, otherwise false
- Disjunction ($\vee$) combines two statements with "or", requiring at least one to be true for the compound statement to be true
- P : "I will go to the beach", Q : "I will go to the mountains", $P \vee Q$: "I will go to the beach or I will go to the mountains"
- $P \vee Q$ is true when at least one of P or Q is true, false only when both are false

Validity of arguments via truth tables

- Logical arguments consist of premises (assumed true statements) and a conclusion (statement following from premises)
- Construct a truth table for the compound statement formed by premises and conclusion to determine validity
- An argument is valid if the conclusion is true whenever all premises are true
- Premises: "If it is raining, the grass is wet", "It is raining", Conclusion: "The grass is wet"
- If premises are true and conclusion is false, the argument is invalid
- Constructing a truth table helps assess the logical structure and validity of an argument
- Identifies cases where premises may be true but conclusion is false, indicating an invalid argument

Truth values in logical operations

- Interpreting truth values of negations, conjunctions, and disjunctions is crucial for understanding compound statements
- Negation ($\neg P$): "not P " or "it is not the case that P "
- P : "The light is on", $\neg P$: "The light is not on"
- Conjunction ($P \wedge Q$): " P and Q " or "both P and Q "
- P : "I am hungry", Q : "I am thirsty", $P \wedge Q$: "I am hungry and I am thirsty"
- Disjunction ($P \vee Q$): " P or Q " or "at least one of P or Q "
- P : "I will watch a movie", Q : "I will read a book", $P \vee Q$: "I will watch a movie or I will read a book (or both)"

- Understanding the meaning of logical connectives is essential for interpreting truth values in compound statements
- Helps analyze the relationships between component statements and the overall truth value of the compound statement

Additional Logical Statements and Properties

- Conditional statement ($P \rightarrow Q$): "if P , then Q " or " P implies Q "
- P : "It rains", Q : "The ground is wet", $P \rightarrow Q$: "If it rains, then the ground is wet"
- True in all cases except when P is true and Q is false
- Biconditional statement ($P \leftrightarrow Q$): " P if and only if Q " or " P is equivalent to Q "
- P : "The triangle has three equal sides", Q : "The triangle is equilateral", $P \leftrightarrow Q$: "The triangle has three equal sides if and only if it is equilateral"
- True when both P and Q have the same truth value
- Tautology: A compound statement that is always true regardless of the truth values of its components
- Example: $P \vee \neg P$ (law of excluded middle)
- Contradiction: A compound statement that is always false regardless of the truth values of its components
- Example: $P \wedge \neg P$ (law of non-contradiction)

2.4 Truth Tables for the Conditional and Biconditional

Conditional statements are like if-then promises in logic. They're only false when the "if" part is true but the "then" part isn't. This helps us understand cause-and-effect relationships in everyday life and math.

Biconditional statements are two-way streets, true when both parts match. They're useful for defining things precisely. Understanding these logical structures helps us reason better and solve problems more effectively.

Truth Tables for Conditional and Biconditional Statements

Truth tables for conditional statements

- Conditional statement has the form "if p , then q " or " p implies q ", denoted as $P \rightarrow Q$
- P represents the hypothesis (antecedent) and Q represents the conclusion (consequent)
- Example: "If it rains (p), then the ground will be wet (q)"
- Truth table for a conditional statement $P \rightarrow Q$ shows the statement is only false when the hypothesis is true and the conclusion is false
- If the hypothesis is false, the conditional statement is always true, regardless of the truth value of the conclusion
- Truth table:

p	q	$p \rightarrow q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	T
F	F	T

- Real-world example: "If you study hard (p), then you will pass the exam (q)"
- If you study hard and pass the exam, the statement is true
- If you study hard but don't pass the exam, the statement is false
- If you don't study hard, the statement is true regardless of whether you pass or fail the exam
- The contrapositive of a conditional statement is logically equivalent to the original statement

Validity of biconditional statements

- Biconditional statement has the form " p if and only if q ", denoted as $p \leftrightarrow q$
- Combination of a conditional statement and its converse: $(p \rightarrow q) \wedge (q \rightarrow p)$
- Example: "A figure is a square (p) if and only if it has four equal sides and four right angles (q)"
- Biconditional statement is true when both p and q have the same truth value (both true or both false)
- Truth table:

p	q	$p \leftrightarrow q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	T

- Real-world example: "Two triangles are congruent (p) if and only if their corresponding sides and angles are equal (q)"
- If the triangles are congruent and their sides and angles are equal, the statement is true
- If the triangles are not congruent and their sides and angles are not equal, the statement is true
- If the triangles are congruent but their sides and angles are not equal (or vice versa), the statement is false

Applications of conditional logic

- Conditional statements used in computer programming for if-else statements and loops
- Example: "If the user enters a valid password (p), then grant access to the system (q)"
- If the password is valid and access is granted, the statement is true
- If the password is valid but access is not granted, the statement is false
- If the password is invalid, the statement is true regardless of whether access is granted or not

- Biconditional statements used to define equivalence relations or check for equality between two conditions
- Example: "A number is even (p) if and only if it is divisible by 2 (q)"
- If a number is even and divisible by 2, the statement is true
- If a number is not even and not divisible by 2, the statement is true
- If a number is even but not divisible by 2 (or vice versa), the statement is false

Related Concepts

- Logical equivalence: Two statements are logically equivalent if they have the same truth values for all possible combinations of their component propositions
- Tautology: A compound statement that is always true, regardless of the truth values of its component propositions
- Converse and inverse: The converse of "if p, then q" is "if q, then p", while the inverse is "if not p, then not q"

2.5 Equivalent Statements

Logical equivalence and conditional statements are key concepts in propositional logic. They help us analyze and compare complex statements, determining when different forms convey the same meaning or lead to the same conclusions.

Understanding these concepts allows us to evaluate arguments, simplify complex logical expressions, and recognize valid reasoning patterns. Mastering truth tables and conditional forms enhances our ability to think critically and communicate precisely in various fields.

Logical Equivalence and Conditional Statements

Truth tables for logical equivalence

- Evaluate the logical equivalence of two statements using truth tables
- Represent each statement as a column in the truth table
- List all possible combinations of truth values (true or false) for the component statements in the rows
- Compare the truth values in the columns for each statement to determine logical equivalence
- Statements are logically equivalent if the truth values match for every row
- Statements are not logically equivalent if the truth values differ in any row
- A statement that is always true regardless of the truth values of its components is called a tautology

Forms of conditional statements

- Conditional statements have the form "If P, then Q" ($P \rightarrow Q$)
- P is the hypothesis or antecedent
- Q is the conclusion or consequent
- Converse of a conditional statement switches the hypothesis and conclusion

- "If Q, then P" ($Q \rightarrow P$)
- Inverse of a conditional statement negates both the hypothesis and conclusion
- "If not P, then not Q" ($\neg P \rightarrow \neg Q$)
- Contrapositive of a conditional statement switches and negates the hypothesis and conclusion
- "If not Q, then not P" ($\neg Q \rightarrow \neg P$)
- Biconditional statements express "if and only if" relationships between propositions

Equivalence in conditional logic

- A conditional statement is logically equivalent to its contrapositive
- $P \rightarrow Q$ is logically equivalent to $\neg Q \rightarrow \neg P$
- Verify this equivalence using a truth table
- A conditional statement is not logically equivalent to its converse or inverse
- $P \rightarrow Q$ is not logically equivalent to $Q \rightarrow P$ (converse)
- $P \rightarrow Q$ is not logically equivalent to $\neg P \rightarrow \neg Q$ (inverse)
- Verify these non-equivalences using truth tables

Propositional Logic and Logical Connectives

- Propositional logic deals with the study of propositions and their relationships
- Logical connectives (such as AND, OR, NOT) are used to combine simple propositions into complex ones
- De Morgan's laws describe the relationship between negation and these connectives in compound statements

2.6 De Morgan's Laws

De Morgan's Laws are powerful tools for simplifying logical statements. They show how to negate compound statements by flipping the connectives and negating each part. This makes complex logic easier to understand and manipulate.

These laws are super useful in many fields, from computer science to electrical engineering. They help us break down tricky logical problems, design better circuits, and even improve how we communicate complex ideas.

De Morgan's Laws

Application of De Morgan's Laws

- Negates compound statements by negating each part and changing the logical connective
- Negation of a conjunction ($p \wedge q$) becomes the disjunction of the negated parts ($\neg p \vee \neg q$)
- $\neg(p \wedge q) \equiv \neg p \vee \neg q$
- Negation of a disjunction ($p \vee q$) becomes the conjunction of the negated parts ($\neg p \wedge \neg q$)

- $\neg(p \vee q) \equiv \neg p \wedge \neg q$

- Applies De Morgan's Laws using these steps: 1. Negate each part of the compound statement individually 2. Change the logical connective from $\wedge$ to $\vee$ or vice versa

- Negates the entire statement without using the phrase "It is not the case that..."

- Examples:

- $\neg(A \wedge B) \equiv \neg A \vee \neg B$

- $\neg(C \vee D) \equiv \neg C \wedge \neg D$

- De Morgan's Laws are fundamental in set theory, allowing for the manipulation of set complements and unions/intersections

Negation of conditional statements

- Expresses the negation of a conditional statement ($p \rightarrow q$) as a conjunction of the antecedent and the negation of the consequent ($p \wedge \neg q$)

- $\neg(p \rightarrow q) \equiv p \wedge \neg q$

- Negates a conditional statement by: 1. Keeping the antecedent (p) as it is 2. Negating the consequent (q) 3. Changing the logical connective from $\rightarrow$ to $\wedge$

- Translates the negation of a conditional statement into a conjunction

- Examples:

- $\neg(A \rightarrow B) \equiv A \wedge \neg B$

- $\neg(C \rightarrow D) \equiv C \wedge \neg D$

Truth tables for De Morgan's Laws

- Verifies the logical equivalence of statements involving De Morgan's Laws using truth tables

- Creates a truth table by: 1. Listing all possible combinations of truth values for the variables involved 2. Evaluating the truth values of the compound statements using the logical connectives 3. Comparing the truth values of the statements on both sides of the equivalence

- Confirms statements are logically equivalent if the truth values match for all combinations of variable values

- Verifies $\neg(p \wedge q) \equiv \neg p \vee \neg q$ using a truth table:

p	q	$p \wedge q$	$\neg(p \wedge q)$	$\neg p$	$\neg q$	$\neg p \vee \neg q$
T	T	T	F	F	F	F
T	F	F	T	F	T	T
F	T	F	T	T	F	T
F	F	F	T	T	T	T

- Confirms the logical equivalence as the truth values in the columns for $\neg(p \wedge q)$ and $\neg p \vee \neg q$ match

- Truth tables can be used to prove a tautology in boolean algebra

Applications in Digital Logic

- De Morgan's Laws are crucial in the design and analysis of logic gates in digital circuits
- The duality principle in boolean algebra is closely related to De Morgan's Laws, allowing for the transformation of expressions by interchanging AND and OR operations

2.7 Logical Arguments

Arguments come in two main flavors: inductive and deductive. Inductive arguments use evidence to draw probable conclusions, while deductive arguments use logic to reach certain conclusions. Understanding these types helps us evaluate the strength and validity of arguments.

Conditional arguments, using "if-then" statements, follow specific laws like Modus Ponens and Modus Tollens. These laws help us analyze and construct valid arguments. Truth tables and Venn diagrams are handy tools for verifying the validity of arguments visually.

Types of Arguments and Their Evaluation

Inductive vs deductive arguments

- Inductive arguments draw conclusions based on patterns, observations, or evidence
- Conclusions are probable, not certain since they rely on empirical evidence (scientific studies, surveys, historical data)
- Strength is evaluated by the likelihood of the conclusion being true given the premises
- Strong inductive argument: Premises provide significant support for the conclusion (Most swans observed are white, therefore the next swan observed will likely be white)
- Weak inductive argument: Premises provide little support for the conclusion (Some birds can fly, therefore penguins can fly)
- Deductive arguments draw conclusions based on logical reasoning from premises
- Conclusions are certain if the premises are true and the argument is valid since they rely on logical structure (syllogisms, proofs)
- Validity is evaluated by the structure of the argument, not the truth of the premises
- Valid deductive argument: Conclusion necessarily follows from the premises (All men are mortal. Socrates is a man. Therefore, Socrates is mortal)
- Invalid deductive argument: Conclusion does not necessarily follow from the premises (All cats are mammals. All dogs are mammals. Therefore, all cats are dogs)
- A counterexample can be used to disprove a deductive argument by showing a case where the premises are true but the conclusion is false

Analyzing Conditional Arguments

Laws of conditional arguments

- Conditional arguments involve an "if-then" statement (conditional premise)
- Antecedent: The "if" part of the conditional premise (P in $P \rightarrow Q$)

- Consequent: The "then" part of the conditional premise (q in $p \rightarrow q$)
- Law of Detachment (Modus Ponens) states if the conditional premise and the antecedent are true, then the consequent must be true
- Example: If it is raining (p), then the ground is wet (q). It is raining (p is true). Therefore, the ground is wet (q is true).
- Law of Denying the Consequent (Modus Tollens) states if the conditional premise is true and the consequent is false, then the antecedent must be false
- Example: If the switch is on (p), then the light is on (q). The light is not on (q is false). Therefore, the switch is not on (p is false).

Verifying Validity Using Truth Tables and Venn Diagrams

Validity verification techniques

- Truth tables list all possible combinations of truth values for the premises and conclusion
- An argument is valid if the conclusion is true whenever all the premises are true
- Example: If it is sunny (p), then I will go to the beach (q). It is sunny (p is true). Therefore, I will go to the beach (q is true).

p	q	$p \rightarrow q$	p	q
T	T	T	T	T
T	F	F	T	F
F	T	T	F	T
F	F	T	F	F

- Venn diagrams represent sets and their relationships using overlapping circles
- An argument is valid if the conclusion set is a subset of the intersection of the premise sets
- Example: All squares (S) are rectangles (R). All rectangles (R) are quadrilaterals (Q). Therefore, all squares (S) are quadrilaterals (Q).

[A Venn diagram with three circles labeled S inside R inside Q , demonstrating the subset relationships.]

Elements of Logical Arguments

- Premise: A statement or proposition used as a basis for reasoning or argument
- Conclusion: The logical result or consequence derived from the premises
- Logical connectives: Words or symbols used to join simple statements into compound statements (e.g., "and", "or", "if-then")
- Propositional logic: A branch of logic that deals with propositions and their relationships, using symbols and connectives to represent and analyze arguments
- Fallacy: An error in reasoning that undermines the logic of an argument

Unit 3 – Number Systems and Theory

3.1 Prime and Composite Numbers

Prime and composite numbers are the building blocks of mathematics. Primes have only two factors, while composites have more. Understanding these concepts helps us break down larger numbers and solve complex problems.

Greatest common divisors and least common multiples have real-world applications. From scheduling buses to simplifying fractions, these mathematical tools help us find common ground between numbers and make calculations easier.

Prime and Composite Numbers

Prime vs composite numbers

- Prime numbers have exactly two factors (1 and itself) while composite numbers have more than two factors
- Examples of prime numbers include 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29
- Examples of composite numbers include 4, 6, 8, 9, 10, 12, 14, 15, 16, 18, 20
- Divisibility rules help determine if a number is divisible by another number without performing division
- Even numbers (ends in 0, 2, 4, 6, or 8) are divisible by 2
- Numbers whose sum of digits is divisible by 3 are divisible by 3
- Numbers whose last two digits are divisible by 4 are divisible by 4
- Numbers ending in 0 or 5 are divisible by 5
- Even numbers whose sum of digits is divisible by 3 are divisible by 6
- Numbers whose sum of digits is divisible by 9 are divisible by 9
- Factor trees break down a number into its prime factors by repeatedly dividing the number and its factors until all factors are prime

Greatest common divisor calculation

- The greatest common divisor (GCD) is the largest positive integer that divides each of the numbers without a remainder
- Prime factorization is used to find the GCD of two or more numbers 1. Find the prime factorization of each number 2. Identify the common prime factors among the numbers 3. Multiply the common prime factors to obtain the GCD
- Example: To find the GCD of 24 and 36:
- Prime factorization of 24: $2^3 \times 3$
- Prime factorization of 36: $2^2 \times 3^2$
- Common prime factors: $2^2 \times 3$

- GCD: $2^2 \times 3 = 12$

Least common multiple applications

- The least common multiple (LCM) is the smallest positive integer that is divisible by each of the numbers
- Prime factorization is used to find the LCM of a set of numbers
 1. Find the prime factorization of each number
 2. Identify the highest power of each prime factor among the numbers
 3. Multiply the highest powers of each prime factor to obtain the LCM
- Example: To find the LCM of 12 and 18:
- Prime factorization of 12: $2^2 \times 3$
- Prime factorization of 18: 2×3^2
- Highest powers of each prime factor: $2^2 \times 3^2$
- LCM: $2^2 \times 3^2 = 36$
- LCM has real-world applications in scheduling and planning
- Example: Two buses (Bus A and Bus B) leave a station at the same time. Bus A returns every 12 minutes, and Bus B returns every 18 minutes. To find when they will next leave the station at the same time, calculate the LCM of 12 and 18, which is 36. The buses will next leave the station at the same time after 36 minutes.

Number Theory and Related Concepts

- Number theory is the branch of mathematics that studies the properties of integers (whole numbers, both positive and negative)
- Natural numbers are the counting numbers (1, 2, 3, ...) and form the basis for many number theory concepts
- The multiplicative inverse of a number is another number that, when multiplied by the original number, yields 1
- Goldbach's conjecture is an unproven hypothesis in number theory stating that every even integer greater than 2 can be expressed as the sum of two prime numbers

3.2 The Integers

Integers are the building blocks of mathematics, encompassing whole numbers that can be positive, negative, or zero. They're represented on a number line, with positive numbers to the right of zero and negative numbers to the left.

Understanding integers is crucial for basic arithmetic operations. Addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division of integers follow specific rules based on their signs. These operations form the foundation for more complex mathematical concepts.

Understanding Integers

Integers on number lines

- Integers are whole numbers that can be positive, negative, or zero

- Positive integers located to the right of zero on a number line (1, 2, 3)
- Negative integers located to the left of zero on a number line (-1, -2, -3)
- Zero is neither positive nor negative and is located at the center of the number line

Comparison of integer values

- Comparing integers
- Integer to the right on the number line is greater than the integer to the left
- Greater than symbol ($>$) indicates one integer is larger than another ($5 > 2$)
- Less than symbol ($<$) indicates one integer is smaller than another ($-3 < 1$)
- Equal to symbol ($=$) indicates two integers have the same value ($-4 = -4$)
- Ordering integers
- Arrange integers from left to right on the number line to order from least to greatest (-5, -2, 0, 3, 7)
- Arrange integers from right to left on the number line to order from greatest to least (8, 4, 1, -1, -6)
- Absolute value of an integer is its distance from zero on the number line, regardless of its sign

Arithmetic operations with integers

- Addition
 - Add integers with the same sign (both positive or both negative) by adding their absolute values and keeping the sign $(+5) + (+3) = +8$, $(-2) + (-7) = -9$
 - Add integers with different signs by subtracting the absolute values and keeping the sign of the integer with the larger absolute value $(+4) + (-6) = -2$, $(-3) + (+8) = +5$
- Subtraction
 - Subtract integers by adding the opposite (additive inverse) of the subtrahend (number being subtracted) to the minuend (number being subtracted from)
 - 1. $(+7) - (+2) = (+7) + (-2) = +5$
 - 2. $(-5) - (-9) = (-5) + (+9) = +4$
 - 3. $(+6) - (-3) = (+6) + (+3) = +9$
- Multiplication
 - Multiply integers by multiplying their absolute values and following the sign rules:
 - Same signs (both positive or both negative) result in a positive product $(+3) \times (+5) = +15$, $(-2) \times (-4) = +8$
 - Different signs (one positive and one negative) result in a negative product $(+6) \times (-2) = -12$, $(-7) \times (+3) = -21$
- Division
 - Divide integers by dividing their absolute values and following the sign rules (same as multiplication):

- Same signs (both positive or both negative) result in a positive quotient $(+15) \div (+3) = +5$, $(-24) \div (-4) = +6$
- Different signs (one positive and one negative) result in a negative quotient $(+18) \div (-2) = -9$, $(-35) \div (+5) = -7$

Properties of Integers

- Even numbers are integers divisible by 2 without a remainder
- Odd numbers are integers not divisible by 2 without a remainder
- Rational numbers include all integers, as they can be expressed as a ratio of two integers
- Integer exponents represent repeated multiplication of a base number by itself, with negative exponents indicating reciprocals

3.3 Order of Operations

PEMDAS is your math GPS, guiding you through calculations. It's a simple acronym that helps you navigate complex equations by telling you which operations to do first. Without it, you'd be lost in a sea of numbers.

Mastering PEMDAS is crucial for solving math problems correctly. It's not just about memorizing an order; it's about understanding how different operations interact. This skill is essential for everything from basic arithmetic to advanced algebra.

Order of Operations (PEMDAS)

Order of operations in arithmetic

- PEMDAS acronym represents the order to perform arithmetic operations
- Parentheses: Evaluate expressions inside parentheses first (brackets, braces)
- Exponents: Calculate powers, roots, and other exponents
- Multiplication and Division: Perform from left to right
- Addition and Subtraction: Perform from left to right
- Applies the correct sequence of operations for accurate results
- Ignoring the order leads to incorrect answers
- Example: $3 + 4 \times 2 - 1$
- Multiply $4 \times 2 = 8$ first according to PEMDAS
- Then add and subtract from left to right: $3 + 8 - 1 = 10$
- Operations with the same precedence (multiplication/division, addition/subtraction) are performed from left to right (following the order of precedence)
- Example: $24 \div 4 \times 2$
- 1. Divide $24 \div 4 = 6$ first since it appears on the left
- 2. Then multiply $6 \times 2 = 12$ to get the final result

Expressions with grouping symbols

- Parentheses and other grouping symbols have the highest precedence in PEMDAS
- Perform operations inside the innermost parentheses first
- Work outward to the next set of parentheses until all are resolved
- Grouping symbols override the standard order of operations
- Ensures parts of the expression are evaluated together
- Example: $2 \times (3 + 4) - 1$ 1. Add inside parentheses: $2 \times 7 - 1$ 2. Multiply: $14 - 1$ 3. Subtract to get the final result: 13
- Nested parentheses are evaluated from the innermost pair outward
- Example: $2 \times (3 + (4 - 1))$
 1. Innermost parentheses: $2 \times (3 + 3)$
 2. Outer parentheses: 2×6
 3. Multiply to get the final result: 12

Simplification of complex expressions

- Break down complex expressions into smaller parts
- Apply PEMDAS rules to each part separately
- Simplify innermost parentheses, exponents, multiplication/division, addition/subtraction
- Example: $3 + 2 \times (4 - 1)^2 \div 3$ 1. Parentheses: $3 + 2 \times 3^2 \div 3$ 2. Exponents: $3 + 2 \times 9 \div 3$ 3. Multiplication and division from left to right:
 - $2 \times 9 = 18$
 - $18 \div 3 = 6$
- Simplified: $3 + 6$ 4. Addition: 9
- Remember equal precedence of multiplication/division and addition/subtraction
- Perform left to right when at the same level
- Use parentheses to group parts of the expression for clarity
- Example: $(3 + 2) \times (4 - 1) = 15$ is different from $3 + 2 \times (4 - 1) = 9$
- Grouping affects the order and the final result

Algebraic Expressions and Properties

- Algebraic expressions combine numbers, variables, and operations
- The associative property allows regrouping of terms without changing the result
- Example: $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$
- Numerical evaluation involves substituting specific values for variables in algebraic expressions

3.4 Rational Numbers

Rational numbers include fractions, terminating decimals, repeating decimals, and percentages. They show up whenever you measure, compare, convert, or calculate with quantities that can be written as a ratio of two integers.

From adding fractions to converting percentages, rational numbers are versatile tools. We'll learn how to perform operations, switch between different forms, and apply these skills to practical situations like calculating discounts or converting units.

Rational Number Operations and Applications

Operations with rational numbers

- Addition and subtraction of rational numbers involves finding a common denominator for fractions with unlike denominators (e.g., $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3}$), then adding or subtracting the numerators while keeping the common denominator
- Multiplication of rational numbers is performed by multiplying the numerators and denominators separately (e.g., $\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{3}{4} = \frac{6}{12} = \frac{1}{2}$), then simplifying the resulting fraction if possible
- Division of rational numbers is carried out by multiplying the dividend by the reciprocal of the divisor (e.g., $\frac{3}{4} \div \frac{2}{5} = \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{5}{2} = \frac{15}{8}$), then simplifying the resulting fraction if possible
- Order of operations (PEMDAS) dictates the sequence in which operations should be performed: Parentheses, Exponents, Multiplication and Division (left to right), Addition and Subtraction (left to right)

Representations of rational numbers

- Converting fractions to decimals is done by dividing the numerator by the denominator (e.g., $\frac{3}{4} = 0.75$)
- Converting decimals to fractions involves writing the decimal as a fraction over a power of 10, then simplifying if possible (e.g., $0.6 = \frac{6}{10} = \frac{3}{5}$)
- Converting fractions to percentages is achieved by multiplying the fraction by 100 and adding the % symbol (e.g., $\frac{2}{5} = 40\%$)
- Converting percentages to fractions requires writing the percentage as a fraction over 100, then simplifying if possible (e.g., $75\% = \frac{75}{100} = \frac{3}{4}$)
- Converting mixed numbers to improper fractions involves multiplying the whole number by the denominator, adding the numerator, and keeping the denominator (e.g., $2\frac{1}{3} = \frac{7}{3}$)
- Converting improper fractions to mixed numbers is done by dividing the numerator by the denominator to get the whole number and remainder, then writing the remainder as a fraction (e.g., $\frac{11}{4} = 2\frac{3}{4}$)

Properties of rational numbers

- Equivalence: Two rational numbers are equivalent if they represent the same value (e.g., $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{2}{4}$)
- Density: Between any two rational numbers, there exists infinitely many other rational numbers
- Ordering: Rational numbers can be arranged in order on a number line, with each number having a unique position
- Rational numbers form a subset of the real number system, which also includes irrational numbers

Applications of rational numbers

- Percentage problems involve: 1. Finding a percentage of a number: $\text{number} \times \frac{\text{percentage}}{100}$ (e.g., 25% of 80 is $80 \times \frac{25}{100} = 20$) 2. Finding what percentage one number is of another: $\frac{\text{part}}{\text{whole}} \times 100\%$ (e.g., 15 is 30% of 50 because $\frac{15}{50} \times 100\% = 30\%$) 3. Finding the whole given a part and a percentage: $\frac{\text{part}}{\frac{\text{percentage}}{100}}$ (e.g., if 40 is 80% of a number, the number is $\frac{40}{\frac{80}{100}} = 50$)
- Unit conversions require setting up a proportion with the given units and the desired units, then solving the proportion for the unknown quantity (e.g., converting 5 feet to inches: $\frac{5 \text{ feet}}{1} = \frac{x \text{ inches}}{12 \text{ inches/foot}}$, so $x = 60$ inches)
- Proportions are solved by writing the proportion as two equivalent fractions, cross-multiplying and solving for the unknown variable, and verifying the solution by plugging it back into the original proportion (e.g., if $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{x}{12}$, then $2 \times 12 = 3 \times x$, so $x = 8$)

3.5 Irrational Numbers

Numbers come in two flavors: rational and irrational. Rational numbers are fractions or decimals that end or repeat. Irrational numbers, like π or $\sqrt{2}$, go on forever without repeating. They're weird but important.

Irrational numbers pop up in math and real life more than you'd think. They're crucial in geometry, physics, and even music theory. Learning to work with them opens up a whole new world of mathematical possibilities.

Understanding Irrational Numbers

Rational vs irrational numbers

- Rational numbers expressed as a ratio of two integers $\frac{a}{b}$, where $b \neq 0$ (examples: $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{3}{4}$, $-\frac{5}{7}$)
- Decimal representations either terminate after a finite number of digits (0.5, 1.25) or repeat in a cyclical pattern (0.3333... , 0.1212...)
- Irrational numbers cannot be expressed as a ratio of two integers
- Decimal representations never terminate and never repeat in a cyclical pattern, continuing infinitely without any discernible pattern
- Well-known examples include $\sqrt{2}$, $\sqrt{3}$, $\sqrt{5}$, π (pi), and e (Euler's number)
- Irrational numbers have unique decimal expansions that continue infinitely without repeating

Types of Irrational Numbers

- Algebraic numbers: irrational numbers that are roots of polynomial equations with rational coefficients (e.g., $\sqrt{2}$, $\sqrt[3]{5}$)
- Transcendental numbers: irrational numbers that are not algebraic (e.g., π , e)
- Both algebraic and transcendental numbers can be represented using continued fractions, which are expressions involving infinite sequences of fractions

Simplification of square roots

- Perfect squares are numbers that result from multiplying an integer by itself (1, 4, 9, 16, 25, etc.)

- Simplifying a square root involves factoring out the largest perfect square from the radicand (number under the square root symbol) 1. Simplify the square root of the perfect square 2. Leave the remaining factor under the square root symbol

- Example: $\sqrt{48}$

- 48 factored as 16×3 , where 16 is a perfect square (4×4)

- $\sqrt{48} = \sqrt{16 \times 3} = \sqrt{16} \times \sqrt{3} = 4\sqrt{3}$ (simplified form)

Arithmetic with irrational numbers

- Addition and subtraction combine like terms, which are terms with the same irrational number ($2\sqrt{3} + 5\sqrt{3} = 7\sqrt{3}$)

- Multiplication involves multiplying the coefficients and irrational parts separately ($(2\sqrt{3})(3\sqrt{5}) = 6\sqrt{15}$)

- Division requires rationalizing the denominator by multiplying numerator and denominator by the conjugate of the denominator

- Conjugate of $a + b\sqrt{c}$ is $a - b\sqrt{c}$

- Example: $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3}$ (rationalized form)

Applying Irrational Number Concepts

Solve problems involving irrational numbers in real-world contexts

- Pythagorean theorem states that in a right triangle with legs a and b and hypotenuse c , $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$

- If a and b are rational, c may be irrational ($3^2 + 4^2 = 5^2$, where 5 is irrational)

- Trigonometric ratios (sine, cosine, tangent) of angles in a right triangle may be irrational ($\sin(45^\circ) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$, which is irrational)

- Natural logarithms and exponential functions often involve the irrational number e

- $\ln(1) = 0$, but $\ln(2)$ is irrational

- $e^0 = 1$, but e^1 is irrational

- Irrational numbers can be located on the real number line, filling in the gaps between rational numbers

3.6 Real Numbers

Real numbers are the backbone of everyday math, from simple counting to complex calculations. They include whole numbers, fractions, and even those tricky numbers that go on forever without repeating. Understanding real numbers helps us make sense of quantities in the real world.

Real numbers have special properties that make working with them easier. These properties let us rearrange numbers in equations, group them differently, and distribute multiplication over addition. Knowing these tricks can simplify complex math problems and make calculations more manageable.

Real Numbers

Real vs complex numbers

- Real numbers represent values that can be plotted on a single number line (1 , -3.5 , $\sqrt{2}$, π)
- Encompass natural numbers, whole numbers, integers, rational numbers, and irrational numbers
- Complex numbers consist of a real part and an imaginary part and cannot be represented on a single number line ($3 + 2i$, $-1 - 4i$)
- Imaginary part is a multiple of i , the imaginary unit defined as $i^2 = -1$

Subsets of real numbers

- Natural numbers are positive integers starting from 1 ($1, 2, 3, \dots$)
- Used for counting and ordering discrete objects
- Whole numbers include all natural numbers and zero ($0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$)
- Represent non-negative quantities and magnitudes
- Integers consist of whole numbers and their negatives ($\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$)
- Used to represent quantities that can be positive, negative, or zero
- Rational numbers can be expressed as fractions, ratios of two integers ($\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{3}{4}$, $-\frac{2}{3}$)
- Include terminating decimals (0.5) and repeating decimals ($0.333\dots$)
- Irrational numbers cannot be expressed as fractions and have non-terminating, non-repeating decimal expansions ($\sqrt{2}$, π , e)
- Arise from operations like taking square roots of non-perfect squares or as solutions to certain equations
- Some irrational numbers, like π and e , are also transcendental numbers, which are not algebraic

Properties for simplifying expressions

- Commutative property allows changing the order of operands without affecting the result
- Addition: $a + b = b + a$ ($2 + 3 = 3 + 2$)
- Multiplication: $a \times b = b \times a$ ($4 \times 5 = 5 \times 4$)
- Associative property allows regrouping operands without changing the outcome
- Addition: $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$ ($(2 + 3) + 4 = 2 + (3 + 4)$)
- Multiplication: $(a \times b) \times c = a \times (b \times c)$ ($(2 \times 3) \times 4 = 2 \times (3 \times 4)$)
- Distributive property distributes multiplication over addition or subtraction
- $a \times (b + c) = (a \times b) + (a \times c)$ ($3 \times (2 + 4) = (3 \times 2) + (3 \times 4)$)
- Identity property leaves a value unchanged when combined with the identity element
- Additive identity: $a + 0 = a$ ($5 + 0 = 5$)

- Multiplicative identity: $a \times 1 = a$ ($7 \times 1 = 7$)
- Inverse property combines a value with its inverse to yield the identity element
- Additive inverse: $a + (-a) = 0$ ($3 + (-3) = 0$)
- Multiplicative inverse (reciprocal): $a \times \frac{1}{a} = 1$, where $a \neq 0$ ($4 \times \frac{1}{4} = 1$)

Fundamental properties of real numbers

- Density property: Between any two real numbers, there exists another real number
- This property allows for infinite subdivision of the number line
- Completeness property: Every non-empty subset of real numbers with an upper bound has a least upper bound
- This property ensures that there are no "gaps" in the real number system
- Algebraic properties: Real numbers follow various rules for arithmetic operations, including the commutative, associative, and distributive properties mentioned above

3.7 Clock Arithmetic

Clock arithmetic is a fun way to understand numbers that wrap around, like on a clock face. It's all about adding, subtracting, and multiplying within a set range, usually 12 for hours or 7 for days of the week.

This system helps solve real-world problems involving recurring events. By assigning numbers to days or times, we can easily calculate future dates or times for meetings, appointments, or other cyclical activities.

Clock Arithmetic

Clock arithmetic operations

- Operates on a system of arithmetic based on numbers appearing on a clock face where they "wrap around" after reaching a certain value called the modulus
- For a standard 12-hour clock, the modulus is 12 denoted as mod 12
- Addition in clock arithmetic involves adding two numbers as usual and finding the remainder when divided by 12
- $8 + 7 = 15$ in regular arithmetic, but in mod 12, it is equivalent to 3 ($15 \div 12$ has a remainder of 3)
- Subtraction in clock arithmetic involves subtracting two numbers as usual and finding the remainder when divided by 12
- If the result is negative, add 12 to the difference until obtaining a positive value between 0 and 11 inclusive
- $2 - 5 = -3$ in regular arithmetic, but in mod 12, it is equivalent to 9 ($-3 + 12 = 9$)
- Multiplication in clock arithmetic involves multiplying two numbers as usual and finding the remainder when divided by 12
- $4 \times 7 = 28$ in regular arithmetic, but in mod 12, it is equivalent to 4 ($28 \div 12$ has a remainder of 4)
- Division modulo is performed by finding a number that, when multiplied by the divisor, gives the dividend (modulo the modulus)

Modular arithmetic for weekdays

- Represents days of the week using modular arithmetic with modulo 7 ($\text{mod } 7$) by assigning each day a number from 0 to 6
- Sunday = 0, Monday = 1, Tuesday = 2, Wednesday = 3, Thursday = 4, Friday = 5, Saturday = 6
- To find the day of the week a certain number of days from a given day, add the number of days to the numeric value of the given day and calculate the result modulo 7 to find the numeric value of the resulting day
- If today is Tuesday (2) and you want to know what day it will be 10 days from now, calculate $(2 + 10) \text{ mod } 7 = 12 \text{ mod } 7 = 5$, which corresponds to Friday

Problem-solving with recurring events

- Determines the appropriate modulus based on the recurring event or schedule
- $\text{mod } 7$ for weekly events
- $\text{mod } 12$ for monthly events
- Uses addition, subtraction, or multiplication in the chosen modulus to calculate the desired result
- Example: A meeting occurs every 5 days, starting on a Monday. If today is Friday, calculate how many days until the next meeting
1. Assign numeric values to the days: Monday = 1, Friday = 5
2. Subtract the numeric value of the starting day from the current day: $(5 - 1) \text{ mod } 7 = 4 \text{ mod } 7 = 4$
3. Subtract the result from the meeting frequency: $(5 - 4) \text{ mod } 7 = 1 \text{ mod } 7 = 1$
- The next meeting is 1 day from Friday, which is Saturday

Advanced Modular Arithmetic Concepts

- Inverse modulo: A number that, when multiplied by the original number, results in 1 (modulo the modulus)
- Modular exponentiation: The process of raising a number to a power in modular arithmetic, useful in cryptography
- Euler's theorem: Relates to modular exponentiation and provides a way to simplify calculations with large exponents
- Fermat's little theorem: A special case of Euler's theorem, used in primality testing and cryptographic algorithms

3.8 Exponents

Exponent rules simplify complex calculations, making math more manageable. They help us work with powers, roots, and fractions efficiently. Understanding these rules is crucial for solving equations and manipulating expressions in algebra and beyond.

From product and quotient rules to rational exponents, these tools streamline mathematical operations. Mastering exponent properties enhances problem-solving skills and prepares you for advanced math concepts. It's all about making calculations easier and more intuitive.

Exponent Rules and Properties

Exponent rules for simplification

- Product rule: $a^m \cdot a^n = a^{m+n}$
- Multiplies powers with the same base by adding exponents ($2^3 \cdot 2^4 = 2^7 = 128$)
- Simplifies expressions by combining like terms with the same base
- Quotient rule: $\frac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}$
- Divides powers with the same base by subtracting exponents ($3^5 \div 3^2 = 3^3 = 27$)
- Simplifies expressions by canceling out common factors in numerator and denominator
- Power rule: $(a^m)^n = a^{m \cdot n}$
- Raises a power to another power by multiplying exponents ($(4^2)^3 = 4^6 = 4,096$)
- Simplifies expressions by combining multiple exponents into a single exponent
- Zero power rule: $a^0 = 1$ (for any non-zero base)
- Represents any number raised to the power of zero equals 1

Distributive property of exponents

- Distributive property of exponents: $(a \cdot b)^n = a^n \cdot b^n$
- Raises each factor in a product to the same power ($(2 \cdot 3)^4 = 2^4 \cdot 3^4 = 1,296$)
- Expands expressions by distributing the exponent to each factor
- Dividing expressions with exponents: $\frac{a^n}{b^n} = (\frac{a}{b})^n$
- Divides expressions with the same exponent by raising the quotient to that exponent ($6^3 \div 2^3 = 3^3 = 27$)
- Simplifies expressions by combining the division and exponentiation operations

Conversion of exponent signs

- Negative exponent rule: $a^{-n} = \frac{1}{a^n}$
- Converts a negative exponent to a positive exponent in the denominator ($5^{-2} = 1/5^2 = 1/25$)
- Represents the reciprocal of the base raised to the positive exponent
- Converting from negative to positive exponents: $\frac{1}{a^{-n}} = a^n$
- Moves a base with a negative exponent from denominator to numerator and changes sign ($1/2^{-3} = 2^3 = 8$)
- Simplifies expressions by eliminating negative exponents
- Converting from positive to negative exponents: $\frac{1}{a^n} = a^{-n}$
- Moves a base with a positive exponent from denominator to numerator and changes sign ($1/3^4 = 3^{-4} = 1/81$)

- Simplifies expressions by representing reciprocals with negative exponents

Rational Exponents and Roots

- Rational exponents: $a^{\frac{m}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{a^m}$
- Expresses roots using fractional exponents
- Connects exponents to roots (e.g., $8^{\frac{1}{3}} = \sqrt[3]{8} = 2$)
- Properties of roots:
 - $\sqrt[n]{ab} = \sqrt[n]{a} \cdot \sqrt[n]{b}$
 - $\sqrt[n]{\frac{a}{b}} = \frac{\sqrt[n]{a}}{\sqrt[n]{b}}$
- Laws of exponents with rational exponents:
 - $(a^{\frac{m}{n}})^p = a^{\frac{mp}{n}}$
 - $a^{\frac{m}{n}} \cdot a^{\frac{p}{q}} = a^{\frac{mq + np}{nq}}$

3.9 Scientific Notation

Scientific notation simplifies working with very large or small numbers. It's a compact way to express values using powers of 10, making calculations easier and more intuitive. This system is crucial for handling extreme scales in science and math.

From cosmic distances to atomic sizes, scientific notation helps us grasp and compare vastly different magnitudes. It's a powerful tool for scientists, engineers, and anyone dealing with numbers that stretch beyond our everyday experience.

Scientific Notation

Conversion of scientific notation

- Expresses very large or very small numbers compactly using a number between 1 and 10 multiplied by a power of 10 in the form $a \times 10^n$, where $1 \leq a < 10$ and n is an integer (1.5×10^6 for 1,500,000)
- Convert from standard form to scientific notation by moving the decimal point to obtain a number between 1 and 10 and counting the number of places moved
- Positive exponent if moved to the left ($123,000 = 1.23 \times 10^5$)
- Negative exponent if moved to the right ($0.0042 = 4.2 \times 10^{-3}$)
- Convert from scientific notation to standard form by moving the decimal point to the right for positive exponents or to the left for negative exponents, filling in zeros as needed ($4.56 \times 10^{-3} = 0.00456$)
- Normalization ensures consistency by adjusting the coefficient to be between 1 and 10

Calculations with scientific notation

- Addition and subtraction require numbers to have the same exponent (power of 10)
- Adjust one number's exponent to match the other, then add or subtract the coefficients ($(1.5 \times 10^3) + (4.2 \times 10^2) = (1.5 \times 10^3) + (0.42 \times 10^3) = 1.92 \times 10^3$)

- Multiplication involves multiplying the coefficients and adding the exponents ($2.0 \times 10^4 \times 3.0 \times 10^{-2} = 6.0 \times 10^2$)
- Division involves dividing the coefficients and subtracting the exponents ($8.0 \times 10^5 \div (2.0 \times 10^{-3}) = 4.0 \times 10^8$)

Real-world applications of scientific notation

- Expresses distances in the universe
- Light-years represent the distance light travels in one year (approx. 9.46×10^{15} meters)
- Parsecs equal approx. 3.26 light-years or 3.09×10^{16} meters
- Measures sizes of atoms and subatomic particles
- Angstroms (1×10^{-10} meters) used to measure atomic radii
- Electron radius approximately 2.82×10^{-15} meters
- Represents time scales
- Age of the universe estimated around 13.8×10^9 years old
- Half-life of radioactive elements like carbon-14 is 5,730 years or 5.73×10^3 years

Understanding magnitude and precision

- Base 10 is used in scientific notation to represent powers of ten
- Magnitude refers to the size or scale of a number in scientific notation
- Order of magnitude describes approximate size differences between values
- Precision in scientific notation is determined by the number of significant figures in the coefficient

3.10 Arithmetic Sequences

Arithmetic sequences are number lists with a constant difference between terms. They're easy to spot and have a handy formula for finding any term. This makes them super useful for predicting patterns and solving real-world problems.

Knowing how to calculate the sum of a finite arithmetic sequence is a game-changer. It lets you quickly add up large sets of numbers, which comes in handy for everything from finance to physics calculations.

Arithmetic Sequences

Recognition of arithmetic sequences

- Arithmetic sequence is a list of numbers where the difference between any two consecutive terms remains constant
- This constant difference called the common difference denoted as d
- To identify an arithmetic sequence, calculate the difference between each pair of consecutive terms
- If the differences are equal for all pairs, the sequence is arithmetic (1, 4, 7, 10, ...) since the common difference is 3

- If the differences are not equal, the sequence is not arithmetic (1, 4, 9, 16, ...) since the differences are not constant

Formula for nth term

- The formula for the n th term of an arithmetic sequence is $a_n = a_1 + (n - 1)d$
- a_n represents the n th term in the sequence
- a_1 represents the first term in the sequence
- n represents the position of the term
- d represents the common difference between consecutive terms
- To find a specific term in an arithmetic sequence using the formula: 1. Identify the first term a_1 , the common difference d , and the position n of the desired term 2. Substitute these values into the formula $a_n = a_1 + (n - 1)d$ and simplify
- Example: Find the 8th term of the arithmetic sequence (also known as an arithmetic progression) 5, 9, 13, 17, ...
- $a_1 = 5$, $d = 4$ (since $9 - 5 = 4$, $13 - 9 = 4$, etc.), and $n = 8$
- $a_8 = 5 + (8 - 1)4 = 5 + 28 = 33$
- The 8th term of the sequence is 33

Sum of finite arithmetic sequences

- The sum of a finite arithmetic sequence can be calculated using the formula $S_n = \frac{n}{2}(a_1 + a_n)$
- S_n represents the sum of the first n terms in the sequence
- a_1 represents the first term in the sequence
- a_n represents the n th term in the sequence
- n represents the number of terms being added
- To find the sum of a finite arithmetic sequence using the formula: 1. Identify the first term a_1 , the last term a_n , and the number of terms n 2. Substitute these values into the formula $S_n = \frac{n}{2}(a_1 + a_n)$ and simplify
- Example: Find the sum of the first 12 terms of the arithmetic sequence 3, 7, 11, 15, ...
- $a_1 = 3$, $n = 12$, and the common difference $d = 4$
- To find a_{12} , use the formula $a_n = a_1 + (n - 1)d$
- $a_{12} = 3 + (12 - 1)4 = 3 + 44 = 47$
- Substitute the values into the sum formula: $S_{12} = \frac{12}{2}(3 + 47) = 6(50) = 300$
- The sum of the first 12 terms is 300

Additional Concepts

- Sequence: An ordered list of numbers following a specific pattern

- Series: The sum of the terms in a sequence
- Arithmetic mean: The average of two terms in an arithmetic sequence, which is always equal to the term halfway between them

3.11 Geometric Sequences

Geometric sequences are like mathematical dominos, each number falling into place by multiplying the previous one by a fixed ratio. They're everywhere, from compound interest to population growth, showing how small changes can lead to big results over time.

Understanding geometric sequences unlocks powerful tools for predicting future values and calculating sums. Whether finite or infinite, these sequences help us model real-world scenarios where consistent growth or decay occurs, making complex patterns more manageable.

Geometric Sequences

Geometric sequences and common ratios

- A sequence of numbers where each term is found by multiplying the previous term by a fixed, non-zero number called the common ratio
- To find the common ratio, divide any term by the previous term and the ratio will be the same for any pair of consecutive terms (2, 6, 18, 54, ... has a common ratio of 3)
- Formula for the common ratio: $r = \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}$
- a_n is the n th term of the sequence
- The recursive definition of a geometric sequence is $a_n = r \cdot a_{n-1}$, where a_1 is the first term

Formula for nth term

- The n th term of a geometric sequence can be found using the formula: $a_n = a_1 \cdot r^{n-1}$
- a_n is the n th term
- a_1 is the first term
- r is the common ratio
- n is the position of the term
- To find the n th term, substitute the values for a_1 , r , and n into the formula and simplify
- In the sequence 2, 6, 18, 54, ..., to find the 10th term: 1. Identify $a_1 = 2$, $r = 3$, $n = 10$ 2. Substitute into the formula: $a_{10} = 2 \cdot 3^{10-1} = 2 \cdot 3^9$ 3. Simplify: $a_{10} = 39,366$

Sums of finite geometric sequences

- The sum of a finite geometric sequence can be found using the formula: $S_n = \frac{a_1(1-r^n)}{1-r}$
- S_n is the sum of the first n terms (also called the partial sum)
- a_1 is the first term
- r is the common ratio

- n is the number of terms
- To find the sum, substitute the values for a_1 , r , and n into the formula and simplify
- Real-world applications include:
 - Compound interest: balance of an account earning compound interest grows by a fixed percentage each period, forming a geometric sequence
 - Population growth: if a population grows by a fixed percentage each year, the population values form a geometric sequence (bacteria doubling every hour)
 - Depreciation: value of an asset that depreciates by a fixed percentage each year forms a geometric sequence (car losing 10% of its value annually)

Infinite Geometric Sequences and Series

- A geometric sequence can be infinite if it continues indefinitely
- An infinite geometric sequence can be convergent or divergent
- A convergent sequence approaches a finite limit as n approaches infinity
- A divergent sequence (such as 2, 4, 8, 16, ...) does not approach a finite limit
- The geometric series is the sum of terms in a geometric sequence
- For an infinite geometric series with $|r| < 1$, the sum can be calculated using the formula: $S_{\infty} = \frac{a_1}{1-r}$
- This formula represents the limit of the partial sums as n approaches infinity

Unit 4 – Number Systems and Calculations

4.1 Hindu-Arabic Positional System

The Hindu-Arabic number system revolutionized math with its clever use of place value. Each digit's position determines its worth, multiplying by 10 as you move left. This simple yet powerful idea allows us to represent any number using just ten digits.

Exponential expressions pack a punch by showing repeated multiplication in a compact form. They're super useful for expressing large numbers and growth rates. Understanding how to evaluate these expressions is key to tackling more complex math problems down the road.

Hindu-Arabic Positional System

Place value in Hindu-Arabic numerals

- Uses a base-10 number system where each digit's value depends on its position in the number
- Digits increase in value by a factor of 10 moving from right to left (ones, tens, hundreds)
- Rightmost digit represents the ones place ($10^0 = 1$)
- Moving left, next digit is the tens place ($10^1 = 10$), then hundreds place ($10^2 = 100$), and so on
- Example: In 3,482, the 3 is in the thousands place ($3 \times 10^3 = 3,000$), 4 in the hundreds, 8 in the tens, and 2 in the ones
- This system uses positional notation, where the position of a digit determines its value

Key components of the system

- Zero: Acts as a placeholder to indicate the absence of a value in a specific place
- Decimal point: Separates whole numbers from fractional parts, allowing for representation of numbers between integers
- Digits can be used in any position, with their value determined by their place (positional notation)

Conversion between numeral forms

- To convert Hindu-Arabic numerals to expanded form, multiply each digit by its place value (power of 10) and add the results
- $7,259 = (7 \times 10^3) + (2 \times 10^2) + (5 \times 10^1) + (9 \times 10^0)$
- $7 \times 10^3 = 7 \times 1,000 = 7,000$
- $2 \times 10^2 = 2 \times 100 = 200$
- $5 \times 10^1 = 5 \times 10 = 50$
- $9 \times 10^0 = 9 \times 1 = 9$

- Converting expanded form to Hindu-Arabic numerals involves evaluating each term and adding the results

$$\bullet (6 \times 10^2) + (4 \times 10^1) + (3 \times 10^0) = 600 + 40 + 3 = 643$$

Exponential Expressions

Evaluation of exponential expressions

- Exponential expressions have a base number raised to a power (exponent) indicating number of times base is multiplied by itself
- To evaluate expressions with positive integer exponents, multiply base by itself exponent number of times
- $3^4 = 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 = 81$
- When multiple operations are present, use order of operations (PEMDAS): Parentheses, Exponents, Multiplication/Division, Addition/Subtraction
- Example: $5 + 2^3 \times 6$ 1. Evaluate exponent: $2^3 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$ 2. Perform multiplication: $8 \times 6 = 48$ 3. Perform addition: $5 + 48 = 53$
- Example: $(4 + 3)^2 - 1$ 1. Evaluate parentheses: $4 + 3 = 7$ 2. Evaluate exponent: $7^2 = 7 \times 7 = 49$ 3. Perform subtraction: $49 - 1 = 48$

4.2 Early Numeration Systems

Ancient number systems were wild! Babylonians used base-60, Mayans base-20, and Romans had no zeros. Each had unique symbols and rules for writing numbers, showing how different cultures approached math.

These systems paved the way for our modern numbers. They highlight the evolution of mathematical thinking, from simple tally marks to complex place value systems, shaping how we understand and use numbers today.

Early Numeration Systems

Early numeration system representations

- Babylonian numeration system utilized a base-60 (sexagesimal) system with two distinct symbols: ζ representing 1 and $\angle$ representing 10. The system employed place value, where digits in different positions represented different powers of 60. For instance, $\angle \zeta \angle$ translates to $1 \times 60^2 + 30 \times 60^1 + 2 \times 60^0$, which equals 3,602 in base 10
- Mayan numeration system employed a base-20 (vigesimal) system with symbols including dots (•) for 1, bars (—) for 5, and a shell-like symbol for 0. The system also used place value, where digits in different positions represented different powers of 20. For example, $\bullet\bullet\bullet\text{---}\bullet\bullet$ translates to $3 \times 20^2 + 2 \times 20^1 + 2 \times 20^0$, which equals 1,242 in base 10
- Roman numeration system used a base-10 system without place value, utilizing seven distinct symbols: I (1), V (5), X (10), L (50), C (100), D (500), and M (1,000). The system relied on additive and subtractive principles, where symbols were added together or subtracted based on their relative

positions. For instance, MCMXCIV translates to $1,000 + (1,000 - 100) + (100 - 10) + (5 - 1)$, which equals 1,994 in base 10

Conversion between numeration systems

- Converting from early numeration systems to Hindu-Arabic (base 10) involves:
- Babylonian: Multiplying each digit by its corresponding power of 60 and adding the results
- Mayan: Multiplying each digit by its corresponding power of 20 and adding the results
- Roman: Using the additive and subtractive principles to determine the value
- Converting from Hindu-Arabic (base 10) to early numeration systems involves:
- Babylonian: Dividing the number by 60 repeatedly, using the remainders as digits in the sexagesimal system
- Mayan: Dividing the number by 20 repeatedly, using the remainders as digits in the vigesimal system
- Roman: Expressing the number using the appropriate combination of Roman numerals (I, V, X, L, C, D, M)

Features of ancient vs modern numerals

- Symbols varied across numeration systems:
- Babylonian used two distinct symbols ($\{$ and $\angle$) for 1 and 10
- Mayan used dots ($\bullet$) for 1, bars ($—$) for 5, and a shell-like symbol for 0
- Roman used seven distinct symbols (I, V, X, L, C, D, M) for specific values
- Place value usage differed:
- Babylonian used place value based on powers of 60
- Mayan used place value based on powers of 20
- Roman did not use place value, relying on additive and subtractive principles instead
- Zero representation varied:
- Babylonian had no explicit symbol for zero but used a placeholder to indicate an empty position
- Mayan had a specific symbol for zero (shell-like symbol)
- Roman had no concept of zero in the numeration system
- Base numbers differed:
- Babylonian used base-60 (sexagesimal)
- Mayan used base-20 (vigesimal)
- Roman used base-10 (decimal) but without place value

Ancient Counting Methods and Number Bases

- Tally marks were one of the earliest forms of counting, used to keep track of quantities

- Base systems in ancient numeration varied, influencing the complexity and efficiency of calculations
- Positional notation, where the position of a digit determines its value, was a significant advancement in number representation
- Number bases, such as base-60 in Babylonian and base-20 in Mayan systems, affected how numbers were written and calculated
- The development of different base systems reflected the cultural and practical needs of various civilizations

4.3 Converting with Base Systems

Number base systems show how numbers can be represented and manipulated in different formats. They are especially common in computing, where binary and hexadecimal are used to store data and perform calculations.

Converting between bases is a key skill in working with different number systems. Place value methods and repeated division give you practical ways to move between decimal, binary, hexadecimal, and other bases.

Number Base Systems

Number base conversion methods

- Place value method for converting from base 10 to another base
- Expresses the base 10 number as a sum of powers of the new base multiplied by their respective coefficients
- Coefficients are determined by the digits in the new base representation
- Example: $75_{10} = 7 \times 8^1 + 5 \times 8^0 = 115_8$
- Place value method for converting from another base to base 10
- Multiplies each digit in the number by the base raised to the power of its place value position (rightmost digit has a place value of 0, increasing by 1 for each position to the left)
- Sums the resulting products to obtain the base 10 equivalent
- Example: $1101_2 = 1 \times 2^3 + 1 \times 2^2 + 0 \times 2^1 + 1 \times 2^0 = 13_{10}$
- Repeated division method for converting from base 10 to another base
- Divides the base 10 number by the new base repeatedly until the quotient becomes 0
- Collects the remainders in reverse order to form the digits of the new base representation
- Example: $42_{10} = (42 \div 2 = 21 \text{ remainder } 0, 21 \div 2 = 10 \text{ remainder } 1, 10 \div 2 = 5 \text{ remainder } 0, 5 \div 2 = 2 \text{ remainder } 1, 2 \div 2 = 1 \text{ remainder } 0, 1 \div 2 = 0 \text{ remainder } 1) = 101010_2$
- Repeated multiplication method for converting from another base to base 10
- Starts with the leftmost digit and multiplies it by the base, then adds the next digit to the right
- Repeats this process, moving right, until all digits have been processed
- The final result is the base 10 equivalent of the original number

- Example: $1101_2 = ((1 \times 2 + 1) \times 2 + 0) \times 2 + 1 = 13_{10}$

Error identification in base conversions

- Incorrect place values
- Occurs when the wrong power of the base is used for a given digit's position
- Fix by ensuring each digit is multiplied by the base raised to the correct power
- Incorrect base usage
- Happens when the wrong base is used during the conversion process
- Fix by double-checking the base being converted to or from
- Incorrect remainders or quotients in repeated division
- Results from errors in the division process or misrecording remainders
- Fix by carefully rechecking division operations and remainder values
- Incorrect ordering of digits
- Occurs when digits are written in the wrong order, especially when using the repeated division method
- Fix by ensuring digits are written in the correct order, from left to right, based on the conversion method used

Arithmetic in non-decimal systems

- Counting in binary
- Uses only the digits 0 and 1
- Increments by 1, carrying over to the next place value when necessary
- Example: 0, 1, 10, 11, 100, 101, ...
- Counting in hexadecimal
- Uses digits 0-9 and letters A-F (representing 10-15)
- Increments by 1, carrying over to the next place value when necessary
- Example: 0, 1, 2, ..., 9, A, B, ..., F, 10, 11, ...
- Addition in binary
- Adds each column, starting from the rightmost, and carries over when the sum is 2 or greater
- Example: $1101_2 + 101_2 = (1 + 1 = 0 \text{ carry } 1, 0 + 0 + 1 = 1, 1 + 1 = 0 \text{ carry } 1, 1 + 0 + 1 = 0 \text{ carry } 1) = 10010_2$
- Addition in hexadecimal
- Adds each column, starting from the rightmost, and carries over when the sum is 16 or greater
- Example: $3E_{16} + 2A_{16} = (14 + 10 = 24, 2 + 3 + 1 = 6) = 68_{16}$
- Subtraction in binary

- Subtracts each column, starting from the rightmost, and borrows when necessary
- Example: $1101_2 - 101_2 = (1 - 1 = 0, 0 - 0 = 0, 1 - 1 = 0, 1 - 0 = 1) = 1000_2$
- Subtraction in hexadecimal
- Subtracts each column, starting from the rightmost, and borrows when necessary
- Example: $3E_{16} - 2A_{16} = (14 - 10 = 4, 3 - 2 = 1) = 14_{16}$
- Multiplication in binary
 1. Creates a partial product for each binary digit in the multiplier
 2. Shifts each partial product left by the place value of the corresponding multiplier digit
 3. Sums the partial products to get the final result
- Example:
 $1101_2 \times 101_2 = (1101 \times 1 = 1101, 1101 \times 0 = 0000, 1101 \times 1 = 1101000) = 1000001_2$
- Multiplication in hexadecimal
- Follows the same process as binary multiplication, but uses the hexadecimal multiplication table for single-digit multiplications
- Example: $3E_{16} \times 2A_{16} = (3E \times A = 276, 3E \times 2 = 7C0) = A7E_{16}$

Common Number Bases and Their Applications

Binary (base 2)

- Widely used in computer systems and digital electronics
- Represents data using only the digits 0 and 1
- Each digit is called a bit (binary digit)
- Example: ASCII character encoding, digital logic circuits

Octal (base 8)

- Used in some older computer systems and digital electronics
- Represents data using digits 0-7
- Often used as a compact representation of binary, with each octal digit corresponding to three binary digits
- Example: Unix file permissions, color codes in early computer graphics

Hexadecimal (base 16)

- Commonly used in computer systems and digital electronics
- Represents data using digits 0-9 and letters A-F (representing 10-15)
- Often used as a compact representation of binary, with each hexadecimal digit corresponding to four binary digits
- Frequently used to represent colors in web design and computer graphics (RGB color model)
- Example: #FF0000 represents red, memory addresses in programming

Number Systems and Notation

Positional Notation

- A system for representing numbers where each digit's position determines its value
- The value of each digit is multiplied by the base raised to the power of its position
- Used in most modern number systems (e.g., decimal, binary, hexadecimal)

Base Conversion

- The process of changing a number's representation from one base to another
- Involves using methods like repeated division or multiplication
- Useful for working with different number systems in computing and mathematics

Radix Point

- The symbol used to separate the integer and fractional parts of a number in positional notation
- Equivalent to the decimal point in base 10, but applicable to all number systems
- Example: In binary, 101.01 represents 5.25 in decimal, with the radix point separating whole and fractional parts

Complement System

- A method for representing negative numbers in digital systems
- Commonly used in computer arithmetic to simplify subtraction operations
- Two's complement is widely used in binary systems for signed integer representation

4.4 Addition and Subtraction in Base Systems

Non-decimal base systems use unique digits and place values. Addition and subtraction follow similar rules to decimal math, but with different carrying and borrowing thresholds based on the base number.

Understanding these systems helps grasp number representation in various contexts. Mastering addition and subtraction in different bases builds a foundation for more complex mathematical operations and computer science concepts.

Addition and Subtraction in Non-Decimal Base Systems

Addition and subtraction in non-decimal bases

- Understand place value in non-decimal bases where each digit represents a power of the base ($1234_5 = 1 \times 5^3 + 2 \times 5^2 + 3 \times 5^1 + 4 \times 5^0$)
- Perform addition by adding digits in each place value from right to left, carrying over when the sum exceeds the base value ($123_5 + 214_5 = 342_5$)
- Perform subtraction by subtracting digits in each place value from right to left, borrowing from the next place value when needed ($342_5 - 214_5 = 123_5$)

- Recognize that different base systems (also called numeral systems) use different numbers of digits

Addition tables for various bases

- Create addition tables showing the sum of any two digits in a given base system with b rows and b columns for base b
- Example base 5 addition table:

+	0	1	2	3	4
0	0	1	2	3	4
1	1	2	3	4	10
2	2	3	4	10	11
3	3	4	10	11	12
4	4	10	11	12	13

Common errors in non-decimal calculations

- Forgetting to carry over when the sum exceeds the base value ($4_5 + 3_5 = 12_5$, not 7_5)
- Incorrectly borrowing during subtraction ($30_5 - 12_5 = 13_5$, not 22_5)
- Mixing up digits from different base systems by using digits outside the range of the base system
- Applying decimal (base 10) rules to non-decimal base calculations instead of using the unique rules for each base system based on place values and carrying/borrowing procedures

Understanding Base Systems and Positional Notation

- Base systems use a radix (the base number) to determine the number of unique digits used
- Positional notation assigns a value to each digit based on its position in the number
- The place value of each digit is determined by multiplying the digit by the base raised to the power of its position
- Different base systems use different sets of symbols or digits to represent numbers

4.5 Multiplication and Division in Base Systems

Multiplication and division in different base systems can be tricky, but they're super important. These operations work similarly to base 10, but with a twist. You'll need to use different multiplication tables and division algorithms specific to each base.

Converting between bases is key to understanding and checking your work. By mastering these skills, you'll be able to work confidently in various number systems, from binary to octal and beyond.

Multiplication and Division in Different Base Systems

Multiplication and division in base systems

- Understand the concept of place value in different base systems
- Each digit's value depends on its position and the base of the number system

- In base b , each place value represents a power of b (b^0, b^1, b^2 , etc.)
- Example: In base 5, the number 123_5 represents $1 \times 5^2 + 2 \times 5^1 + 3 \times 5^0 = 25 + 10 + 3 = 38_{10}$
- This system of representing numbers is called positional notation
- Perform multiplication in different base systems
- Multiply digits in the given base, carrying over values when necessary
- Use multiplication tables specific to the base system
- Example: In base 8, $6 \times 7 = 52_8$ (because $6 \times 7 = 42_{10}$, which is 52_8)
- Multiplication tables for base systems (base 2, base 8) differ from the familiar base 10 tables
- Perform division in different base systems
- Divide numbers in the given base using appropriate division algorithms
- Use division tables specific to the base system
- Example: In base 5, $43 \div 4 = 13_5$ with a remainder of 1 (because $43_5 = 23_{10}$ and $23 \div 4 = 5$ remainder 3, which is 13_5 with a remainder of 1_5)
- Division algorithms (long division, short division) can be adapted for different base systems

Conversion between base systems

- Convert numbers from base b to base 10
- Multiply each digit by its place value (b^n) and sum the results
- Example: $123_4 = 1 \times 4^2 + 2 \times 4^1 + 3 \times 4^0 = 16 + 8 + 3 = 27_{10}$
- Place values in base b are powers of b (b^0, b^1, b^2 , etc.)
- Convert numbers from base 10 to base b
- Repeatedly divide the base 10 number by b and keep track of the remainders
- The remainders, read from bottom to top, form the digits of the number in base b
- Example: $42_{10} = (42 \div 5 = 8 \text{ remainder } 2, 8 \div 5 = 1 \text{ remainder } 3, 1 \div 5 = 0 \text{ remainder } 1) = 132_5$
- Conversion process involves successive division by the target base b
- This process is known as the base conversion algorithm
- Verify calculations by converting input and output numbers between base systems
- If conversions match, the calculation is likely correct
- If conversions do not match, there may be an error in the calculation or conversion process
- Example: To verify $6 \times 7 = 52_8$, convert 6_8 and 7_8 to base 10 (6_{10} and 7_{10}), multiply (42_{10}), and convert the result back to base 8 (52_8)

Common errors in non-base-10 arithmetic

- Using invalid digits for the given base system

- Example: In base 5, using the digit "7" is incorrect because base 5 only uses digits 0-4
- Each base system has a limited set of valid digits (0 to $b - 1$)
- Applying base 10 arithmetic rules to other bases
- Each base system has its own rules and tables for arithmetic operations
- Example: In base 2, $1 + 1 = 10_2$, not 2 as in base 10
- Forgetting to carry over values during addition or multiplication
- In any base system, when the sum or product of digits exceeds $b - 1$, the excess value must be carried over to the next place value
- Example: In base 6, $5 + 4 = 13_6$, not 9_6 , because $5 + 4 = 9_{10}$, which is 13_6
- Incorrectly converting between base systems
- Mixing up conversion processes or using the wrong base in calculations can lead to errors
- Example: Converting 123_4 to base 10 as $1 \times 10^2 + 2 \times 10^1 + 3 \times 10^0$ instead of using powers of 4

Number Systems and Arithmetic Operations

- A number system is a way of representing numbers using digits and place values
- Different number systems use different bases (e.g., binary, octal, decimal, hexadecimal)
- Arithmetic operations (addition, subtraction, multiplication, division) can be performed in any number system
- The rules for carrying and borrowing in arithmetic operations depend on the base of the number system

Unit 5 – Algebra

5.1 Algebraic Expressions

Algebraic expressions are the building blocks of math, using letters and symbols to represent numbers and operations. They're like a secret code that lets us describe relationships between quantities and solve complex problems.

Simplifying expressions and performing operations are key skills for working with algebraic expressions. By combining like terms, following the order of operations, and applying basic math rules, we can manipulate these expressions to find solutions and make calculations easier.

Algebraic Expressions

Translation of verbal to algebraic expressions

- Variables represent unknown or changing quantities in mathematical expressions
- Common variables include x , y , a , b , etc. (z , t , n)
- Mathematical operations express relationships between quantities
- Addition combines quantities using the $+$ symbol ($5 + 3$)
- Subtraction finds the difference between quantities using the $-$ symbol ($8 - 2$)
- Multiplication scales quantities using the $\times$ symbol or parentheses (2×4 or $2(4)$)
- Division splits quantities using the $\div$ symbol or a fraction bar ($10 \div 2$ or $\frac{10}{2}$)
- Translating verbal descriptions to algebraic expressions involves identifying the unknown quantity, assigning a variable, and expressing the relationship using appropriate mathematical operations
- "The difference between a number and 7" translates to $x - 7$, where x represents the unknown number
- "Three times the sum of a number and 4" translates to $3(x + 4)$, where x represents the unknown number
- Algebraic notation uses symbols and letters to represent numbers and operations in mathematical expressions

Simplification of algebraic expressions

- Like terms have the same variables raised to the same powers and can be combined by adding or subtracting their coefficients
- $2x^2$ and $-5x^2$ are like terms, while $3y$ and $4y^2$ are not
- Combining like terms: $4a + 3a = 7a$, $-2b - 5b = -7b$
- The order of operations (PEMDAS) specifies the sequence in which to simplify expressions 1. Parentheses: Simplify expressions inside parentheses first $(2 + (3 \times 4)) = (2 + 12) = 14$ 2. Exponents: Evaluate exponents, including powers and roots $(2^3 \times 4) = (8 \times 4) = 32$ 3. Multiplication and Division: Perform from left to right $(10 \div 2 \times 3) = (5 \times 3) = 15$ 4. Addition and Subtraction: Perform from left to right $(5 + 3 - 2) = (8 - 2) = 6$

- Simplifying expressions using PEMDAS involves applying each step in the correct order

$$\bullet 3 + 2 \times (5 - 2)^2 - 1 = 3 + 2 \times 3^2 - 1 = 3 + 2 \times 9 - 1 = 3 + 18 - 1 = 20$$

Operations with algebraic expressions

- Addition and subtraction involve combining like terms and distributing negative signs
- $(5x - 3) + (2x + 4) = 7x + 1$
- $(4a + 2b) - (3a - b) = a + 3b$
- Multiplication uses the distributive property to multiply each term of the first expression by each term of the second
- $(3x - 2)(2x + 1) = 6x^2 + 3x - 4x - 2 = 6x^2 - x - 2$
- $(a + b)(a - b) = a^2 - b^2$
- Division involves dividing each term of the numerator by the denominator and simplifying the result
- $\frac{10x^2 - 5x}{5x} = 2x - 1$
- $\frac{6a^2b + 9ab^2}{3ab} = 2a + 3b$

Mathematical Symbols and Equations

- Mathematical symbols are used to represent operations, relationships, and quantities in algebraic expressions
- Equality symbol (=) indicates that two expressions have the same value
- Inequality symbols (<, >, ≤, ≥) show the relationship between two expressions
- An equation is a mathematical statement that asserts the equality of two expressions
- Equations often involve variables and are used to solve for unknown values

5.2 Linear Equations in One Variable with Applications

Linear equations are the building blocks of algebra. They help us solve real-world problems by turning words into math. We use properties like addition and multiplication to simplify equations and find solutions.

Applications of linear equations are everywhere. We can model situations, from figuring out how many apples we bought to calculating complex business decisions. The key is translating the problem into an equation and solving it step by step.

Solving Linear Equations and Applications

Properties and techniques for linear equations

- Addition property of equality maintains equality when adding the same value to both sides of an equation ($x + 3 = 5$ is equivalent to $x + 3 + 2 = 5 + 2$)
- Subtraction property of equality maintains equality when subtracting the same value from both sides of an equation ($x - 4 = 7$ is equivalent to $x - 4 - 1 = 7 - 1$)

- Multiplication property of equality maintains equality when multiplying both sides of an equation by the same non-zero value ($2x = 10$ is equivalent to $2x \cdot 3 = 10 \cdot 3$)
- Division property of equality maintains equality when dividing both sides of an equation by the same non-zero value ($3x = 12$ is equivalent to $\frac{3x}{3} = \frac{12}{3}$)
- Simplify each side of the equation by combining like terms ($2x + 3x - 4 = 6$ becomes $5x - 4 = 6$)
- Isolate the variable term on one side of the equation using the properties of equality ($5x - 4 = 6$ becomes $5x = 10$)
- Solve for the variable by performing the inverse operation on both sides of the equation ($5x = 10$ becomes $x = 2$)

Modeling applications with linear equations

- Identify the unknown quantity and assign a variable to represent it (let x represent the number of apples purchased)
- Translate the given information into mathematical expressions using the variable (cost of apples: $2x$, cost of oranges: $3(5) = 15$)
- Construct a linear equation by setting the expressions equal to each other based on the problem context (total cost: $2x + 15 = 35$)
- Solve the resulting linear equation using the properties of equality and algebraic techniques ($2x = 20$, $x = 10$)
- Interpret the solution in the context of the original problem, ensuring it makes sense and answers the question asked (10 apples were purchased)

Solutions of linear equations

- One solution (consistent and independent)
- After simplifying the equation, the variable term has a non-zero coefficient and is on one side of the equation, while the other side is a constant ($2x + 3 = 7$ has one solution, $x = 2$)
- No solution (inconsistent)
- After simplifying the equation, the variable terms cancel out, leaving a false statement ($3x - 6 = 3x + 2$ simplifies to $0 = 8$, which is false, so there is no solution)
- Infinitely many solutions (consistent and dependent)
- After simplifying the equation, the variable terms cancel out, leaving a true statement ($4x + 2 = 4x + 2$ simplifies to $0 = 0$, which is true for any value of x , so there are infinitely many solutions)

Linear Functions and Graphs

- A linear function is a relationship between two variables where the rate of change (slope) is constant
- The equation of a line represents a linear function in the form $y = mx + b$, where m is the slope and b is the y -intercept
- The slope measures the steepness of the line and represents the rate of change between variables

- The y-intercept is the point where the line crosses the y-axis (when $x = 0$)

5.3 Linear Inequalities in One Variable with Applications

Linear inequalities help us compare quantities and find ranges of solutions. They're like equations, but with greater-than or less-than symbols instead of equals signs. We use them to set limits or boundaries in math problems.

Solving inequalities involves similar steps to solving equations, but with a few twists. We can graph them on number lines, use interval notation, and apply them to real-world situations. Understanding inequalities is key to tackling many practical math problems.

Linear Inequalities in One Variable

Graphing linear inequalities

- Inequalities compare two quantities using symbols
- $<$ represents "less than" ($5 < 7$)
- $>$ represents "greater than" ($9 > 2$)
- $\leq$ represents "less than or equal to" ($x \leq 4$)
- $\geq$ represents "greater than or equal to" ($y \geq -1$)
- Graphing inequalities on a number line involves
- Using an open circle ($\circ$) for strict inequalities ($<$ or $>$)
- Using a closed circle ($\bullet$) for inclusive inequalities ($\leq$ or $\geq$)
- Shading the portion of the number line that satisfies the inequality
- Shade to the right for $>$ or $\geq$ ($x > 3$ shades values greater than 3)
- Shade to the left for $<$ or $\leq$ ($y \leq 0$ shades values less than or equal to 0)
- The shaded portion represents the range of the inequality
- Interval notation expresses the solution set of an inequality concisely
- Use parentheses () for strict inequalities ($x < 5$ is written as $(-\infty, 5)$)
- Use brackets [] for inclusive inequalities ($x \geq -2$ is written as $[-2, \infty)$)
- $-\infty$ represents negative infinity and ∞ represents positive infinity
- $x > 3$ is written as $(3, \infty)$ in interval notation

Algebraic solutions for inequalities

- Solving linear inequalities algebraically is similar to solving linear equations
- Perform the same operation on both sides of the inequality to maintain the inequality (if $x + 3 < 7$, then $x < 4$)
- When multiplying or dividing by a negative number, reverse the inequality symbol
- If $-2x < 6$, then $x > -3$ (dividing by -2 flips the inequality)

- Isolate the variable on one side of the inequality by
- Adding or subtracting the same value from both sides ($x - 5 \geq 1$ becomes $x \geq 6$)
- Multiplying or dividing both sides by the same positive value ($2x < 10$ becomes $x < 5$)
- Check your solution by substituting a value from the solution set into the original inequality (if $x > 2$, then $3 > 2$ is true)
- The solution set represents the domain of the inequality

Linear Functions and Inequalities

- A linear function is represented by an equation in the form $y = mx + b$
- m represents the slope of the line
- b represents the y-intercept (where the line crosses the y-axis)
- Linear inequalities are closely related to linear functions
- They use the same symbols ($>$, $<$, $\geq$, $\leq$) to compare a linear expression to a constant or another linear expression
- A system of inequalities involves two or more inequalities that must be satisfied simultaneously
- A compound inequality combines two inequalities using "and" or "or"
- For example, $2 < x < 5$ means x is greater than 2 and less than 5

Real-world applications of inequalities

- Identify the unknown quantity and assign a variable (let x represent the number of tickets sold)
- Write an inequality that represents the constraints or limits in the problem
- Translate verbal phrases into mathematical symbols
- "At least" means $\geq$ (the store needs to sell at least 50 items)
- "At most" means $\leq$ (the truck can carry at most 2,000 pounds)
- "More than" means $>$ (the company needs to produce more than 500 units)
- "Less than" means $<$ (the project must be completed in less than 30 days)
- Solve the inequality algebraically (if $50 \leq 2x + 10$, then $x \geq 20$)
- Interpret the solution in the context of the problem
- Check if the solution makes sense given the constraints (the company must produce at least 20 items to meet the minimum requirement)
- Example: A store requires a minimum purchase of \$50 to qualify for free shipping. If sales tax is 6%, what is the minimum amount before tax needed to get free shipping? 1. Let X represent the amount spent before tax 2. The total cost with tax must be at least 50 : $1.06x \geq 50$ 3. *Solve the inequality* : $x \geq \frac{50}{1.06} \approx 47.17$ 4. Interpret the result: You need to spend at least \$47.17 before tax to qualify for free shipping

5.4 Ratios and Proportions

Ratios and proportions are powerful tools for comparing quantities and solving real-world problems. They allow us to simplify complex relationships, convert between units, and understand how changes in one quantity affect another.

Mastering these concepts opens doors to applications in finance, science, and everyday life. From scaling recipes to analyzing maps, ratios and proportions help us make sense of the world around us and make informed decisions.

Ratios and Proportions

Ratio notation methods

- Ratios compare two quantities written using "to" (a to b), colon ($a : b$), or fraction ($\frac{a}{b}$) notation
- Simplify ratios by dividing both quantities by their greatest common factor (GCF)
- Equivalent ratios have the same simplified form (2:4, 1:2, and 10:20)
- Ratios can be expressed as fractions, decimals, or percents

Solving proportions through cross-multiplication

- Proportions are equations stating two ratios are equivalent ($\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ or $a : b = c : d$)
- Solve proportions by setting up equivalent ratios and cross-multiplying ($ad = bc$)
- Solve the resulting equation for the unknown variable
- Verify the solution by substituting the value back into the original proportion

Applications of constant proportionality

- The constant of proportionality (k) is the ratio between two directly proportional quantities ($y = kx$, then $k = \frac{y}{x}$)
- Unit rates compare a quantity to one unit of another quantity (miles per hour, price per item)
- Determine unit rates by finding the constant of proportionality
- Use dimensional analysis to convert between different units of measurement
- Scale relationships describe the proportional relationship between corresponding measurements in similar figures
- Scale factor is the constant of proportionality between corresponding lengths
- If the scale factor is k , all lengths in one figure are k times the corresponding lengths in the other figure
- Area scale factor is the square of the length scale factor
- Volume scale factor is the cube of the length scale factor

Types of Proportional Relationships

- Direct proportion: As one quantity increases, the other increases proportionally

- Inverse proportion: As one quantity increases, the other decreases proportionally
- Similar figures maintain the same proportions between corresponding parts, despite differences in size

5.5 Graphing Linear Equations and Inequalities

The coordinate plane is like a map for math. It uses two number lines to pinpoint locations with (x, y) coordinates. This system divides space into four quadrants, each with its own sign rules for x and y values.

Linear equations and inequalities create straight lines or shaded regions on this map. By plotting points and connecting them, we can visualize these mathematical relationships. Understanding slopes, intercepts, and half-planes helps us navigate this mathematical landscape.

Graphing in the Coordinate Plane

Plotting points in coordinate systems

- Rectangular coordinate system (Cartesian coordinate system) forms a two-dimensional plane by intersecting a horizontal number line (x -axis) and a vertical number line (y -axis)
- Origin is the point where the x -axis and y -axis intersect with coordinates $(0, 0)$
- Points on the coordinate plane represented by ordered pairs (x, y) where x is the horizontal coordinate and y is the vertical coordinate
- Coordinate plane divided into four quadrants by the x -axis and y -axis
- Quadrant I: $x > 0$ and $y > 0$ (upper right)
- Quadrant II: $x < 0$ and $y > 0$ (upper left)
- Quadrant III: $x < 0$ and $y < 0$ (lower left)
- Quadrant IV: $x > 0$ and $y < 0$ (lower right)

Graphing Linear Equations and Inequalities

Graphing linear equations

- Linear equation in two variables, x and y , written in the form $ax + by = c$ where a , b , and c are real numbers and a and b are not both zero
- Graphing a linear equation: 1. Find at least two solutions (x, y) that satisfy the equation
- Choose values for x and solve for y , or choose values for y and solve for x 2. Plot the solutions as points on the coordinate plane 3. Connect the points with a straight line
- Graph of a linear equation is a straight line extending infinitely in both directions
- The slope of the line represents the rate of change between x and y coordinates
- The y -intercept is the point where the line crosses the y -axis ($x = 0$)
- The x -intercept is the point where the line crosses the x -axis ($y = 0$)

Linear inequalities on coordinate planes

- Linear inequality in two variables, x and y , written in one of four forms:
 - $ax + by < c$
 - $ax + by \leq c$
 - $ax + by > c$
 - $ax + by \geq c$
- Graphing a linear inequality: 1. Graph the related linear equation $ax + by = c$ as a dashed line
- If the inequality is strict ($<$ or $>$), the dashed line is not included in the solution
- If the inequality is inclusive ($\leq$ or $\geq$), the dashed line is included in the solution, so it should be a solid line 2. Shade the half-plane that satisfies the inequality
- If y is isolated, shade above the line for $>$ or $\geq$, and below the line for $<$ or $\leq$
- If y is not isolated, test a point not on the line to determine which half-plane to shade
- Graph of a linear inequality is a shaded half-plane extending infinitely in all directions, bounded by the line representing the related equality

Relationships between lines

- Parallel lines have the same slope but different y -intercepts
- Perpendicular lines have slopes that are negative reciprocals of each other

5.6 Quadratic Equations with Two Variables with Applications

Quadratic equations are a fundamental part of algebra, describing curves called parabolas. They pop up in everyday situations, from calculating profit margins to predicting projectile motion. Understanding how to solve and graph these equations unlocks a world of practical problem-solving skills.

Mastering quadratics involves three key methods: graphing, factoring, and using the quadratic formula. Each approach has its strengths, and knowing when to use which method is crucial. Real-world applications of quadratics include solving area problems, working with consecutive integers, and tackling right triangle puzzles.

Quadratic Equations

Quadratic equation solving methods

- Graphing quadratic equations
- Plot the equation $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ on a coordinate plane by calculating points or using a graphing tool (graphing calculator, online graphing tool)
- Locate the x -intercepts where the graph intersects the x -axis, representing the roots or solutions of the equation
- Factoring quadratic equations
- Rewrite the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ in standard form

- Decompose the quadratic expression into the product of two linear factors: $(px + q)(rx + s) = 0$ (common factors: $x^2 + 2x + 1 = (x + 1)(x + 1)$, $x^2 - 9 = (x - 3)(x + 3)$)
- Utilize the zero product property: if the product of two factors equals zero, at least one factor must be zero
- Determine the values of x by setting each factor equal to zero and solving the resulting linear equations
- Quadratic formula
- Apply the quadratic formula to solve equations in the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ when factoring is not feasible or efficient
- Quadratic formula: $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$, where a , b , and c are the coefficients of the quadratic equation
- Input the values of a , b , and c into the formula and calculate the solutions by simplifying the expression (example: $2x^2 + 7x - 4 = 0$, $a = 2$, $b = 7$, $c = -4$)

Real-world applications of quadratics

- Area problems
- Define the area of a rectangle using the formula $A = lw$, where l represents the length and w represents the width
- Formulate a quadratic equation by replacing the length and width with expressions based on the problem context (example: length is 3 units more than the width, $l = w + 3$)
- Determine the dimensions of the rectangle by solving the quadratic equation for the unknown variable
- Consecutive integer problems
- Assign the variable x to represent the first integer in a sequence of consecutive integers (example: x , $x + 1$, $x + 2$ for three consecutive integers)
- Construct expressions for the subsequent integers in the sequence using x as a reference
- Develop a quadratic equation using the information provided in the problem and solve for x to find the consecutive integers
- Right triangle problems
- Apply the Pythagorean theorem: $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$, where c represents the hypotenuse and a and b represent the legs of the right triangle
- Replace the lengths of the sides with expressions based on the given information in the problem (example: one leg is 2 units shorter than the hypotenuse, $a = c - 2$)
- Generate a quadratic equation and solve for the missing variable to determine the lengths of the triangle's sides

Graphing Parabolas

Key features of parabola graphs

- Parabola equation in standard form: $y = ax^2 + bx + c$

- The value of a determines the orientation and steepness of the parabola
- For $a > 0$, the parabola opens upward (positive quadratic term, U-shaped graph)
- For $a < 0$, the parabola opens downward (negative quadratic term, inverted U-shaped graph)
- This equation represents a quadratic function, which is a type of polynomial
- Vertex
 - The vertex is the extreme point of the parabola, either a maximum or minimum point depending on the orientation
 - Vertex formula: $(\frac{-b}{2a}, f(\frac{-b}{2a}))$, where $\frac{-b}{2a}$ is the x-coordinate and $f(\frac{-b}{2a})$ is the y-coordinate of the vertex
- Axis of symmetry
 - The axis of symmetry is a vertical line that passes through the vertex and divides the parabola into two equal halves
 - Equation of the axis of symmetry: $x = \frac{-b}{2a}$, derived from the x-coordinate of the vertex
- x-intercepts (roots or solutions)
 - The x-intercepts are the points where the parabola intersects the x-axis, representing the solutions to the quadratic equation
 - To determine the x-intercepts, set $y = 0$ and solve the resulting quadratic equation using factoring or the quadratic formula (example: $y = x^2 - 4x - 5$, x-intercepts at $x = 5$ and $x = -1$)

Properties of quadratic functions

- Domain and range
 - The domain of a quadratic function is typically all real numbers, as the function is defined for any x-value
 - The range depends on the orientation of the parabola:
 - For $a > 0$ (opens upward), the range is $[y_{\text{vertex}}, \infty)$
 - For $a < 0$ (opens downward), the range is $(-\infty, y_{\text{vertex}}]$
- Concavity
 - The concavity of a parabola describes its curvature:
 - When $a > 0$, the parabola is concave up (opens upward)
 - When $a < 0$, the parabola is concave down (opens downward)
 - The concavity determines whether the vertex is a minimum or maximum point

5.7 Functions

Functions are the building blocks of mathematics, describing relationships between inputs and outputs. They're everywhere in our daily lives, from calculating tips to predicting weather patterns. Understanding how to work with functions is key to solving real-world problems.

In this section, we'll explore function notation, evaluation, and the vertical line test. We'll also dive into domain and range, which define the possible inputs and outputs of a function. These concepts form the foundation for more advanced mathematical thinking.

Function Fundamentals

Function notation evaluation

- Function notation $f(x)$ denotes the output value (dependent variable) of function f for input value x (independent variable)
- If $f(x) = 2x + 1$, then $f(3) = 2(3) + 1 = 7$ substitutes input value and simplifies
- Functions can be represented using equations, tables, or graphs
- Evaluate functions using tables by finding the output value corresponding to the given input value
- Evaluate functions using graphs by locating the point with the given input value and determining the corresponding output value

Vertical line test application

- Vertical line test determines if a graph represents a function
- Graph is a function if and only if every vertical line intersects the graph at most once
- Graph fails the vertical line test and is not a function if any vertical line intersects more than once
- Imagine drawing vertical lines at various x -values on the graph to apply the test
- A parabola ($y = x^2$) passes the vertical line test and represents a function
- A circle ($x^2 + y^2 = 1$) fails the vertical line test and does not represent a function

Domain and Range

Domain and range identification

- Domain is the set of all possible input values (x -values) for a function
- For graphs, domain consists of all x -values where the function is defined (has a corresponding y -value)
- For ordered pairs or mappings, domain is the set of all first coordinates (x -values)
- Range is the set of all possible output values (y -values) for a function
- For graphs, range consists of all y -values that correspond to at least one x -value in the domain
- For ordered pairs or mappings, range is the set of all second coordinates (y -values) or elements in the "to" set
- For $f(x) = x^2$, the domain is all real numbers $((-\infty, \infty))$ and the range is all non-negative real numbers $([0, \infty))$
- For the function $\{(1, 2), (3, 4), (5, 6)\}$, the domain is $\{1, 3, 5\}$ and the range is $\{2, 4, 6\}$

Advanced Function Concepts

Function properties and operations

- One-to-one function: Each element of the codomain is paired with at most one element of the domain
- Inverse function: A function that "undoes" the original function, swapping input and output
- Continuous function: A function with no breaks, gaps, or jumps in its graph
- Function composition: Applying one function to the result of another function (e.g., $f(g(x))$)
- Piecewise function: A function defined by multiple sub-functions, each applying to a specific interval of the domain

5.8 Graphing Functions

Linear functions are the building blocks of graphing in math. They show how two variables relate using straight lines on a coordinate plane. Understanding these basics helps us tackle more complex math problems down the road.

We'll learn about intercepts, slope, and different ways to graph linear functions. These skills are crucial for visualizing data, solving equations, and making predictions in various fields like economics and science.

Graphing Linear Functions

Introduction to Functions and Coordinate Systems

- A function is a relationship between inputs (domain) and outputs (range)
- Cartesian coordinates represent points on a plane using ordered pairs (x, y)
- The coordinate plane is divided into four quadrants

X-intercepts and y-intercepts for plotting

- x-intercept represents the point where a graph crosses the x-axis
- y-coordinate is always 0 at the x-intercept (2, 0)
- Find the x-intercept by setting $y = 0$ and solving for x in the equation
- y-intercept represents the point where a graph crosses the y-axis
- x-coordinate is always 0 at the y-intercept (0, 3)
- Find the y-intercept by setting $x = 0$ and solving for y in the equation
- Plot linear equations using intercepts 1. Find the x-intercept by setting $y = 0$ and solving for x 2. Find the y-intercept by setting $x = 0$ and solving for y 3. Plot the x-intercept and y-intercept on the coordinate plane (x-intercept: (2, 0), y-intercept: (0, 3)) 4. Connect the two points with a straight line to create the graph of the linear equation

Slope calculation and interpretation

- Slope formula calculates the steepness and direction of a line
- $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$, where m represents the slope

- (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) are two distinct points on the line $((-1, 2)$ and $(3, 4))$
- Calculate slope by choosing two points on the line
- Substitute the coordinates into the slope formula $m = \frac{4-2}{3-(-1)} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$
- Simplify the fraction if necessary to express the slope in its simplest form
- Interpret slope to understand the behavior of the line
- Positive slope indicates the line is rising from left to right (slope of 2)
- Negative slope indicates the line is falling from left to right (slope of -3)
- Absolute value of the slope determines the steepness
- Larger absolute value means a steeper line (slope of 5 is steeper than slope of 2)
- Smaller absolute value means a flatter line (slope of $\frac{1}{4}$ is flatter than slope of $\frac{1}{2}$)

Graphing with slope-intercept form

- Slope-intercept form expresses a linear equation as $y = mx + b$
- m represents the slope of the line (2)
- b represents the y-intercept (3)
- Graph using slope-intercept form 1. Identify the slope (m) and y-intercept (b) from the equation $y = 2x + 3$ 2. Plot the y-intercept on the coordinate plane at $(0, 3)$ 3. Use the slope to find the next point by rising 2 units and running 1 unit from the y-intercept $(1, 5)$ 4. Connect the y-intercept and the second point with a straight line to create the graph
- Graph with fractional slopes 1. Identify the slope (m) and y-intercept (b) from the equation $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 1$ 2. Plot the y-intercept on the coordinate plane at $(0, -1)$ 3. Use the slope to find the next point by rising 1 unit and running 2 units from the y-intercept $(2, 0)$ 4. Connect the y-intercept and the second point with a straight line to create the graph of the linear equation with a fractional slope

5.9 Systems of Linear Equations in Two Variables

Linear equations are powerful tools for solving real-world problems. They help us model relationships between variables and find solutions to complex situations. Understanding how to work with these equations is crucial for tackling everyday challenges.

Systems of linear equations take problem-solving to the next level. By combining multiple equations, we can solve for multiple unknowns simultaneously. This approach is invaluable in fields like economics, engineering, and science.

Solving Systems of Linear Equations

Methods for solving linear systems

- Graphing method involves plotting both equations on the same coordinate plane
- The point where the two lines intersect represents the solution to the system
- If the lines are parallel (same slope but different y-intercepts), the system has no solution
- If the lines are coincident (same slope and y-intercept), the system has infinitely many solutions

- Substitution method involves solving one equation for one of the variables
- Express the value of one variable in terms of the other (e.g., $y = 2x + 1$)
- Substitute this expression into the other equation and solve for the remaining variable
- Plug the value of the solved variable back into the original equation to find the value of the other variable
- Elimination method involves manipulating the equations to eliminate one of the variables
- Multiply one or both equations by a constant to make the coefficients of one variable equal in magnitude but opposite in sign (e.g., $2x + 3y = 7$ and $-2x + y = 1$)
- Add the equations together to eliminate one variable and solve for the remaining variable
- Substitute the value of the solved variable into either original equation to find the value of the other variable

Solutions as line intersections

- The solution to a system of linear equations corresponds to the point where the two lines intersect on a graph
- If the lines intersect at a single point (e.g., $(2, 3)$), the system has one unique solution
- The x-coordinate of the point of intersection represents the value of the x-variable in the solution
- The y-coordinate of the point of intersection represents the value of the y-variable in the solution
- If the lines are parallel, they never intersect, indicating the system has no solution
- If the lines are coincident, they overlap completely, indicating the system has infinitely many solutions

Real-world applications of linear systems

- Identify the unknown quantities in the problem and assign them variables (e.g., let X be the number of adults and Y be the number of children)
- Create two linear equations that represent the relationships between the unknown quantities based on the given information
- Solve the system of equations using graphing, substitution, or elimination method
- Interpret the solution in the context of the original problem and verify that it makes sense
- Examples of real-world applications include:
 - Mixture problems (e.g., determining the amounts of two solutions with different concentrations to mix to create a new solution with a specific concentration)
 - Cost problems (e.g., finding the prices of two items given the total cost of purchasing a combination of those items)
 - Distance-rate-time problems (e.g., calculating the speeds of two objects traveling in opposite directions or in the same direction)

Modeling with Systems of Linear Equations

Understanding Linear Equations and Variables

- A linear equation is a mathematical expression that represents a straight line when graphed
- Slope represents the rate of change between two variables in a linear equation
- The independent variable (usually x) is the input value that can be freely chosen
- The dependent variable (usually y) is determined by the value of the independent variable

5.10 Systems of Linear Inequalities in Two Variables

Linear inequalities in two variables are powerful tools for modeling real-world constraints. They're graphed on a coordinate plane, with shaded regions representing solutions. Systems of these inequalities combine multiple constraints, creating a more complex solution set.

Understanding how to graph and interpret these systems is crucial for solving optimization problems. By identifying variables, formulating inequalities, and visualizing the solution region, we can tackle resource allocation, production planning, and other practical challenges.

Systems of Linear Inequalities in Two Variables

Graphing linear inequality systems

- Linear inequality in two variables takes the form $ax + by < c$, $ax + by \leq c$, $ax + by > c$, or $ax + by \geq c$, where a , b , and c are real numbers and a and b are not both zero
- Inequality sign determines which half-plane is shaded
- Dashed boundary line used for strict inequalities $<$ or $>$ ($y < 2x + 1$)
- Solid boundary line used for inclusive inequalities $\leq$ or $\geq$ ($y \leq -3x + 4$)
- Graphing a system of linear inequalities involves: 1. Graph each inequality separately on the same coordinate plane 2. Solution set is the intersection of all shaded regions satisfying the inequalities
- Solution set of a system of linear inequalities represents all ordered pairs (x, y) that simultaneously satisfy every inequality in the system

Ordered pairs in inequality systems

- Checking if an ordered pair (x, y) satisfies a system of inequalities:
- Substitute x and y values into each inequality in the system
- If substitution results in true statements for all inequalities, the ordered pair is a solution
- Ordered pair satisfying all inequalities in the system is a solution point contained within the solution set (graphically represented by the intersecting shaded regions)

Real-world applications of inequalities

- Systems of linear inequalities model real-world situations involving constraints or limitations
- Resource allocation problems (budget constraints)

- Production limitations (manufacturing capacity)
- Feasible regions in optimization problems (maximizing profit)
- Modeling a real-world scenario with inequalities: 1. Identify variables and define them in the context of the problem 2. Formulate inequalities representing constraints or limitations on the variables 3. Graph the system of inequalities to visualize the feasible solution region 4. Interpret the solution set in terms of the original real-world problem
- Linear programming problems involve optimizing an objective function subject to constraints modeled by a system of linear inequalities (maximizing profit while satisfying production constraints)

Key components of linear inequalities

- Coordinate plane: The 2D plane where linear inequalities are graphed, consisting of x and y axes
- Quadrants: The four regions of the coordinate plane, divided by the x and y axes
- Slope: The rate of change in a linear equation, representing the steepness of the line
- Y-intercept: The point where a line crosses the y-axis, often used as a starting point when graphing
- Feasibility: The property of a solution satisfying all constraints in a system of linear inequalities

5.11 Linear Programming

Linear programming helps solve real-world optimization problems. It's all about finding the best solution within given constraints. This powerful tool is used in business, economics, and engineering to maximize profits or minimize costs.

The process involves setting up an objective function, graphing constraints, and finding the optimal solution. By identifying decision variables and constraints, we can visualize the problem and determine the best possible outcome.

Linear Programming

Objective function formulation

- Linear equation represents goal of problem, either maximizing or minimizing quantity
- Maximization problems involve maximizing profit, revenue, or production (widget manufacturing)
- Minimization problems involve minimizing cost, time, or resource usage (transportation logistics)
- Identify decision variables in problem
- Decision variables are unknowns that need to be determined to optimize objective function
- Represented by symbols such as X , Y , or other letters (product quantities)
- Write objective function in terms of decision variables
- Combine decision variables with respective coefficients (unit profits)
- If X represents units of Product A and Y represents units of Product B, with profit per unit of A as 10 and per unit of B as 15, objective function to maximize profit would be $10X + 15Y$

Graphing linear inequality systems

- Constraints are limitations or restrictions on decision variables
- Represented as linear inequalities (production time limits)
- If company has limited hours available for production, constraint could be $2x + 3y \leq 120$, where x and y are decision variables and 120 is total available hours
- Graph each constraint as straight line on coordinate plane
- Convert inequality to equation by replacing inequality sign with equals sign
- Plot line on graph
- Determine which side of line satisfies inequality and shade that region (feasible region)
- Feasible region is area on graph where all constraints are satisfied simultaneously
- Intersection of all shaded areas corresponding to constraints
- Any point within feasible region represents possible solution to linear programming problem (production plan)
- Feasibility is crucial for determining valid solutions

Optimal solution determination

- Corner points are vertices of feasible region, where constraint lines intersect
- Also called extreme points
- Represent potential optimal solutions to linear programming problem
- Find coordinates of each corner point by solving system of equations formed by intersecting constraint lines
- Use substitution or elimination methods to solve for x and y values
- Evaluate objective function at each corner point
- Substitute x and y values of each corner point into objective function
- Calculate value of objective function at each corner point (total profit)
- Compare values of objective function at corner points
- For maximization problem, corner point with highest objective function value is optimal solution
- For minimization problem, corner point with lowest objective function value is optimal solution
- If objective function has same value at multiple corner points, there are multiple optimal solutions (alternative optima)

Optimization and Solution Methods

- Linear programming is used for optimization problems in various fields
- Objective is to find the best solution among all feasible alternatives
- Simplex method is an efficient algorithm for solving linear programming problems

- Systematically moves from one feasible solution to another, improving the objective function value
- Linear equations form the basis of constraints and objective functions in linear programming

Unit 6 – Money Management

6.1 Understanding Percent

Percentages are a powerful way to express parts of a whole, making comparisons easier. They're used in everyday life, from calculating discounts to understanding statistics in the news.

Converting percentages to decimals or fractions simplifies calculations. This skill is crucial for solving real-world problems, like determining price increases or calculating experimental errors in science.

Understanding Percent

Percentage calculations using conversions

- Convert percentages to decimals or fractions to simplify calculations
- Divide the percentage by 100 to obtain the decimal equivalent ($25\% = 0.25$)
- Express the percentage as a fraction with a denominator of 100, then simplify if possible ($25\% = 25/100 = 1/4$)
- Multiply the total by the decimal or fraction to determine the percentage of the total
- Use the formula: $\text{Percentage of total} = \text{Total} \times \text{Decimal or fraction}$
- Find the number of female students in a group of 200 if 25% are female: $200 \times 0.25 = 50$ or $200 \times 1/4 = 50$
- Percentages represent a part-whole relationship, expressing a portion of a whole as a fraction of 100

Determining totals from percentages

- Divide the part by the percentage in decimal form to calculate the total
- Apply the formula: $\text{Total} = \text{Part} \div \text{Percentage (in decimal form)}$
- Determine the total number of students in a class if 30 students represent 20% of the class:
 $30 \div 0.20 = 150$

Real-world percentage problem solving

- Calculate percent increase or decrease 1. Find the difference between the new and original values 2. Divide the difference by the original value 3. Multiply by 100 to express as a percentage
- Use the formula: $\text{Percent change} = \frac{\text{New value} - \text{Original value}}{\text{Original value}} \times 100\%$
- Calculate the percent increase if a car's price rises from 20,000 to 22,000:
 $\frac{22,000 - 20,000}{20,000} \times 100\% = 10\%$
- Percent change represents the relative change between two values
- Determine percent error in scientific experiments 1. Calculate the absolute difference between the experimental and accepted values 2. Divide the difference by the accepted value 3. Multiply by 100 to express as a percentage
- Apply the formula: $\text{Percent error} = \frac{|\text{Experimental value} - \text{Accepted value}|}{\text{Accepted value}} \times 100\%$

- Find the percent error if the experimental value is 4.2 and the accepted value is 4.0:

$$\frac{|4.2 - 4.0|}{4.0} \times 100\% = 5\%$$

Related Concepts

- Ratio: A comparison of two quantities, often expressed as a fraction (e.g., 3:4 or 3/4)
- Proportion: An equation stating that two ratios are equal (e.g., 3/4 = 6/8)
- Rate: A ratio comparing two quantities with different units (e.g., miles per hour)

6.2 Discounts, Markups, and Sales Tax

Discounts, markups, and sales tax shape the final price paid for many purchases. Businesses use them to set retail prices, and consumers use them to compare sale prices and total costs.

Calculating discounts, markups, and sales tax uses percent operations. These calculations help determine sale prices, retail prices, and final costs after tax.

Discounts, Markups, and Sales Tax

Discounts and sale price calculations

- Discount represents a reduction in the original price of an item
- Discount amount can be expressed as a dollar value (\$10 off) or percentage (20% off)
- Discount percentage is calculated by dividing the discount amount by the original price and multiplying by 100: $\frac{\text{Discount Amount}}{\text{Original Price}} \times 100$
- Example: If an item originally priced at 50 is discounted by 10, the discount percentage is $\frac{5}{50} \times 100 = 20\%$
- To find the discount amount, multiply the original price by the discount percentage expressed as a decimal
- Example: If an item is priced at 80 with a 15% discount, the discount amount is $80 \times 0.15 = 12$
- Sale price is the price after the discount has been applied
- Calculate the sale price by subtracting the discount amount from the original price:
Original Price – Discount Amount
- Example: If an item originally priced at 60 has a discount of 12, the sale price is $60 - 12 = 48$
- Alternatively, multiply the original price by (1 - discount percentage expressed as a decimal)
- Example: If an item is priced at 75 with a 20% discount, the sale price is $75 \times (1 - 0.20) = 60$

Markup percentages for retail pricing

- Markup is the difference between the wholesale cost and the retail price of an item
- Markup amount can be expressed as a dollar value (\$15 markup) or percentage (30% markup)
- Markup percentage is calculated by dividing the markup amount by the wholesale cost and multiplying by 100: $\frac{\text{Markup Amount}}{\text{Wholesale Cost}} \times 100$

- Example: If an item has a wholesale cost of 40 and a markup of 20, the markup percentage is $\frac{20}{40} \times 100 = 50\%$
- To find the markup amount, multiply the wholesale cost by the markup percentage expressed as a decimal
- Example: If an item has a wholesale cost of 25 with a markup percentage of 60%, the markup amount is $25 \times 0.60 = 15$
- Retail price is the price at which an item is sold to consumers
- Calculate the retail price by adding the markup amount to the wholesale cost:
Wholesale Cost + Markup Amount
- Example: If an item has a wholesale cost of 50 and a markup amount of 30, the retail price is $50 + 30 = 80$
- Alternatively, multiply the wholesale cost by $(1 + \text{markup percentage expressed as a decimal})$
- Example: If an item has a wholesale cost of 60 with a markup percentage of 40%, the retail price is $60 \times (1 + 0.40) = 84$
- Profit margin is closely related to markup and represents the percentage of profit relative to the selling price

Total costs with sales tax

- Sales tax is a percentage of the purchase price added to the total cost of an item
- Sales tax rates vary by state, county, and city (New York City 8.875%, Los Angeles County 9.5%)
- Sales tax amount is calculated by multiplying the purchase price by the sales tax rate expressed as a decimal
- Example: If an item is purchased for 100 in a location with a 7% sales tax rate, the sales tax amount is $100 \times 0.07 = 7$
- Total cost is the final price paid for an item, including the purchase price and sales tax
- Calculate the total cost by adding the sales tax amount to the purchase price:
Purchase Price + Sales Tax Amount
- Example: If an item is purchased for 80 with a sales tax amount of 6.40, the total cost is $80 + 6.40 = 86.40$
- Alternatively, multiply the purchase price by $(1 + \text{sales tax rate expressed as a decimal})$
- Example: If an item is purchased for 120 in a location with a 6.5% sales tax rate, the total cost is $120 \times (1 + 0.065) = 127.80$
- When making purchases in different localities, use the specific sales tax rates for each location to accurately calculate the total cost of items
- Example: Purchasing a \$50 item in City A with a 5% sales tax rate would result in a total cost of \$52.50, while the same item purchased in City B with an 8% sales tax rate would cost \$54
- Some countries use a value-added tax (VAT) system instead of sales tax, which is applied at each stage of production

Market Factors Affecting Pricing

- Supply and demand help determine market prices for goods and services
- Price elasticity measures how sensitive demand is to changes in price
- The Consumer Price Index (CPI) is used to track changes in the cost of goods and services over time, affecting pricing strategies

6.3 Simple Interest

Simple interest is a straightforward way to calculate how much you'll earn or owe on money over time. It's based on the initial amount, interest rate, and time period. This method is commonly used for short-term loans and basic savings accounts.

Understanding simple interest helps you make informed financial decisions. You can figure out loan payments, savings growth, and even how much to invest now to reach future goals. It's a fundamental concept in personal finance and basic investing.

Simple Interest Fundamentals

Calculation of simple interest

- Simple interest formula calculates the interest earned on a principal amount over a given time period at a constant interest rate: $I = Prt$
- I represents the total interest earned
- P represents the principal or initial amount invested or borrowed
- r represents the annual interest rate expressed as a decimal (6% = 0.06)
- t represents the time in years the principal is invested or borrowed
- Future value formula determines the total amount after earning interest, found by adding the principal and interest: $FV = P + I$
- FV represents the future value or total amount after interest is added
- Converting time periods to years for use in simple interest calculations:
 - Months to years: divide the number of months by 12 (6 months = 0.5 years)
 - Days to years: divide the number of days by 365, or 360 for some financial institutions (90 days = 0.25 years)
- Example: \$5,000 principal invested at 4% annual interest for 2 years
- $I = 5000 * 0.04 * 2 = 400$
- $FV = 5000 + 400 = 5400$

Loan balances and partial payments

- Remaining balance formula calculates the amount owed on a loan after making a partial payment, subtracting the payment from the future value: $RB = FV - PP$
- RB represents the remaining balance owed on the loan

- *PP* represents the partial payment amount applied to the loan
- Payoff amount is equivalent to the remaining balance, representing the total amount needed to fully repay the loan
- Example: \$10,000 loan at 5% annual interest for 3 years, with a \$2,000 partial payment made after 2 years
- $I_2 = 10000 * 0.05 * 2 = 1000$
- $FV_2 = 10000 + 1000 = 11000$
- $RB_2 = 11000 - 2000 = 9000$
- $I_3 = 9000 * 0.05 * 1 = 450$
- $FV_3 = 9000 + 450 = 9450$
- Payoff amount after 3 years = \$9,450

Monthly payments and present values

- Monthly payment formula determines the equal periodic payments needed to repay a loan over a given term, dividing the future value by the total number of payments: $MP = \frac{FV}{n}$
- *MP* represents the monthly payment amount
- *n* represents the total number of monthly payments over the loan term
- Present value formula calculates the initial investment needed to reach a future goal amount, discounting the future value based on the interest rate and time: $PV = \frac{FV}{1+rt}$
- *PV* represents the present value or initial investment required
- Example: \$15,000 loan at 6% annual interest for 4 years
- $I = 15000 * 0.06 * 4 = 3600$
- $FV = 15000 + 3600 = 18600$
- $n = 4 * 12 = 48$ monthly payments
- $MP = \frac{18600}{48} = 387.50$ per month
- Example: \$100,000 future retirement goal in 20 years, assuming 5% annual interest
- $PV = \frac{100000}{1 + 0.05 * 20} = 37688.95$
- Initial investment of \$37,688.95 needed to reach \$100,000 in 20 years at 5% interest

Additional Loan Terms

- Borrower: The individual or entity receiving the loan and responsible for repaying it with interest
- Lender: The financial institution or individual providing the loan funds
- Maturity date: The final date by which the loan must be fully repaid
- Finance charge: The total cost of borrowing, including interest and any additional fees

- Amortization: The process of gradually paying off a loan through regular payments that cover both principal and interest

6.4 Compound Interest

Compound interest is a powerful financial concept that can make your money grow faster. It's calculated on both the initial amount and the interest earned over time, leading to exponential growth. Understanding this can help you make smarter investment decisions.

The compound interest formula helps you figure out how much your money will grow over time. You can also use it to calculate how much you need to invest now to reach a future goal. Knowing about effective annual yield helps you compare different investment options.

Compound Interest

Compound interest calculations and comparisons

- Compound interest calculated on initial principal and accumulated interest from previous periods
- Differs from simple interest only calculated on principal (original amount invested)
- Compound interest formula $A = P(1 + \frac{r}{n})^{nt}$
- A final amount (future value), P initial principal, r annual interest rate (decimal), n number of times interest compounded per year, t number of years money invested
- Higher interest rates lead to faster investment growth (5% vs 3%)
- More frequent compounding (higher n) results in larger final amount
- \$1,000 invested at 5% interest for 10 years
- Compounded annually: $A = 1000(1 + \frac{0.05}{1})^{1 \cdot 10} = \$1,628.89$
- Compounded monthly: $A = 1000(1 + \frac{0.05}{12})^{12 \cdot 10} = \$1,647.01$

Present value for savings goals

- Present value formula derived from compound interest formula
- $P = \frac{A}{(1 + \frac{r}{n})^{nt}}$
- Calculates amount needed to invest today to reach specific future goal
- To have \$50,000 in 20 years with 6% annual interest compounded monthly
- $P = \frac{50000}{(1 + \frac{0.06}{12})^{12 \cdot 20}} = \$18,419.18$
- Helps determine initial investment required for retirement, college tuition, down payment on a house

Effective annual yield evaluations

- Effective annual yield (EAY) actual rate of return earned on investment, accounting for compounding
- EAY formula: $EAY = (1 + \frac{r}{n})^n - 1$
- Compares investments with different compounding frequencies (monthly, quarterly, annually)
- 5% interest compounded quarterly vs 4.9% interest compounded monthly

- 5% compounded quarterly: $EAY = (1 + \frac{0.05}{4})^4 - 1 = 0.0509$
or 5.09% – 4.9% compounded monthly: $EAY = (1 + \frac{0.049}{12})^{12} - 1 = 0.0501$ or 5.01%

- 5% interest compounded quarterly yields higher return
- Helps identify most profitable investment option based on compounding frequency and interest rate
- Distinguishes between nominal interest rate (stated rate) and effective annual yield (actual return)

Investment growth analysis tools

- Rule of 72: Estimates time required to double an investment
- Divide 72 by the interest rate to approximate years needed to double the investment
- Compound Annual Growth Rate (CAGR): Measures average annual growth rate over time
- Useful for comparing investments with different time periods or initial values

6.5 Making a Personal Budget

Personal budgeting is all about managing your money wisely. It involves tracking income, categorizing expenses, and allocating funds to different areas of your life. By understanding the basics, you can make informed decisions about your spending and saving habits.

The 50-30-20 rule is a popular budgeting method that simplifies financial planning. It suggests dividing your after-tax income into three main categories: 50% for needs, 30% for wants, and 20% for savings and debt repayment. This approach helps balance essential expenses with personal enjoyment and future financial security.

Personal Budgeting Fundamentals

Categories in personal budgeting

- Identify all income sources (income)
- Employment income encompasses salary, wages, bonuses, and tips earned from a job
- Investment income includes interest earned on savings accounts, dividends from stocks, and rental income from properties
- Other income sources may include gifts, alimony payments, or child support received
- Categorize expenses into fixed and variable costs
- Fixed expenses remain relatively constant each month
- Rent or mortgage payments for housing
- Car payments for vehicle financing
- Insurance premiums for health, auto, or home coverage
- Subscriptions and memberships (gym, streaming services)
- Variable expenses fluctuate from month to month
- Groceries and dining out

- Utilities such as electricity, water, and gas
- Entertainment expenses (movies, concerts, hobbies)
- Clothing and personal care items (toiletries, haircuts)
- Track income and expenses using a spreadsheet (Microsoft Excel, Google Sheets) or budgeting app (Mint, YNAB) to monitor cash flow
- Compare total income to total expenses to determine net income (surplus) or deficit (shortage) each month

50-30-20 budget allocation

- Allocate 50% of after-tax income to needs (essential expenses)
- Housing costs such as rent or mortgage payments
- Groceries and food expenses
- Transportation costs (car payments, fuel, public transit fares)
- Utilities and communication bills (electricity, water, phone, internet)
- Insurance premiums (health, auto, home/renters)
- Allocate 30% of after-tax income to wants (discretionary expenses)
- Entertainment and dining out at restaurants
- Hobbies and leisure activities (sports, crafts, travel)
- Clothing and personal care items beyond the essentials
- Subscriptions and memberships (streaming services, gym)
- Allocate 20% of after-tax income to savings and debt payments
- Emergency fund to cover 3-6 months of living expenses
- Retirement accounts such as 401(k) or IRA
- Other savings goals (down payment for a house, vacation fund, education expenses)
- Credit card and loan payments above the minimum required amounts

Distinguishing Between Needs and Wants

Needs vs wants in budgeting

- Necessary expenses are essential for maintaining a basic standard of living
- Housing expenses (rent or mortgage payments)
- Food and groceries to meet nutritional needs
- Transportation to work or school (car payments, fuel, public transit fares)
- Basic utilities (electricity, water, gas)
- Essential clothing and personal care items (toiletries, work attire)

- Healthcare costs and insurance premiums
- Wants are discretionary expenses that enhance quality of life but are not essential for survival
- Dining out at restaurants and entertainment (movies, concerts, sports events)
- Luxury or brand-name clothing and accessories
- Upgraded electronics and gadgets (latest smartphone, gaming consoles)
- Premium subscriptions and memberships (cable TV packages, high-end gyms)
- Travel and vacation expenses
- Prioritize necessary expenses over wants when creating a budget to ensure essential needs are met
- Adjust spending on wants based on available income and savings goals to maintain financial stability
- Consider lower-cost alternatives for wants to reduce expenses without sacrificing enjoyment
- Cooking meals at home instead of dining out frequently
- Choosing generic or store-brand products over name-brands for groceries and household items
- Utilizing free or low-cost entertainment options (public parks, libraries, community events)

Financial Planning and Goal Setting

- Establish clear financial goals to guide budgeting decisions
- Set short-term and long-term savings targets aligned with personal objectives
- Regularly review and adjust expenses to ensure they support financial goals
- Create a plan to build an emergency fund for unexpected costs
- Develop strategies to pay off debt and increase overall financial stability

6.6 Methods of Savings

Saving money isn't just about stashing cash under your mattress. There are various ways to grow your funds, each with its own perks and quirks. From basic savings accounts to CDs and money market accounts, understanding these options helps you make smarter financial decisions.

Calculating future value and return on investment is crucial for effective saving. These formulas help you predict how much your money will grow over time. By comparing different savings methods, you can choose the best approach to reach your financial goals while managing risk.

Savings Vehicles and Calculations

Future value and ROI calculations

- Future value calculation determines the expected value of an investment at a specific point in the future, considering the time value of money
- Formula: $FV = PV(1 + r)^n$ where FV is the future value, PV is the present value (initial investment), r is the annual interest rate (as a decimal), and n is the number of compounding periods
- Return on investment (ROI) measures the efficiency and profitability of an investment

- Formula: $ROI = \frac{Gain - Cost}{Cost} \times 100\%$ where *Gain* is the final value of the investment and *Cost* is the initial cost of the investment
- Traditional savings accounts offer a safe place to store money with easy access to funds but typically have lower interest rates (0.01% to 0.05%)
- Certificates of Deposit (CDs) are fixed-term savings accounts that offer higher interest rates than traditional savings accounts but impose penalties for early withdrawal (3-month CD at 0.2%, 5-year CD at 0.8%)
- Money market accounts combine features of checking and savings accounts, offering higher interest rates than traditional savings accounts but with restrictions on withdrawals and minimum balance requirements (\$1,000 to \$10,000)

Comparison of savings methods

- Traditional savings accounts provide easily accessible funds with low or no minimum balance requirements and are FDIC insured up to \$250,000 but offer low interest rates compared to other savings vehicles
- Certificates of Deposit (CDs) offer higher fixed interest rates than traditional savings accounts and are FDIC insured up to \$250,000 but lock in funds for the term of the CD with early withdrawal penalties
- Money market accounts offer higher interest rates than traditional savings accounts with check-writing privileges and FDIC insurance up to \$250,000 but have higher minimum balance requirements to avoid fees and limit the number of transactions per month
- Choosing the appropriate savings method involves considering short-term and long-term financial goals, evaluating liquidity needs and accessibility of funds, comparing interest rates and potential returns, and assessing minimum balance requirements and fees
- Diversification across different savings methods can help balance risk and potential returns

Ordinary Annuity Formula and Savings Targets

Periodic payments for savings targets

- Ordinary annuity is a series of equal payments made at equal intervals for a fixed period, such as monthly contributions to a savings account
- Ordinary annuity formula calculates the future value of an annuity: $FV = PMT \left[\frac{(1 + r)^n - 1}{r} \right]$ where *FV* is the future value (savings target), *PMT* is the periodic payment amount, *r* is the periodic interest rate (annual rate divided by the number of compounding periods per year), and *n* is the total number of compounding periods
- Periodic payment amount (*PMT*) required to reach a specific savings target can be determined by solving the ordinary annuity formula: $PMT = \frac{FV}{\left[\frac{(1 + r)^n - 1}{r} \right]}$
- Example calculation for a savings target of \$50,000 with an annual interest rate of 3%, compounded monthly over 10 years: 1. Periodic interest rate: $r = 0.03 \div 12 = 0.0025$ 2. Total compounding periods: $n = 10 \times 12 = 120$ 3. Periodic payment amount: $PMT = \frac{50,000}{\left[\frac{(1 + 0.0025)^{120} - 1}{0.0025} \right]} \approx \380.06

Financial Planning and Risk Management

- Financial planning involves setting savings goals based on individual risk tolerance and financial objectives
- Risk tolerance affects the choice of savings vehicles, with higher-yield options often carrying more risk
- Effective financial planning considers the balance between potential returns (yield) and the level of risk an individual is comfortable with

6.7 Investments

Investing offers various options like bonds, stocks, and mutual funds. Each has unique features, risks, and potential returns. Bonds provide steady income, stocks offer growth potential, and mutual funds balance diversification and professional management.

Understanding investment calculations is crucial for evaluating performance. ROI measures profitability, annual return accounts for time, and compound interest shows wealth accumulation. Retirement accounts like IRAs and 401(k)s offer tax advantages and long-term savings opportunities.

Investment Options

Bonds, stocks, and mutual funds

- Bonds
 - Key features
 - Represent a loan to a company or government entity
 - Pay fixed interest payments at a predetermined coupon rate at regular intervals (semi-annually, annually)
 - Return the principal amount to the bondholder at the maturity date
 - Risks
 - Interest rate risk: bond prices have an inverse relationship with interest rates, falling when interest rates rise and vice versa
 - Default risk: the issuer may fail to make timely interest payments or return the principal amount due to financial difficulties
 - Potential returns
 - Generally provide lower returns compared to stocks but higher than cash equivalents (savings accounts, CDs)
 - Offer a steady stream of income through regular interest payments (U.S. Treasury bonds, corporate bonds)
- Stocks
 - Key features
 - Represent ownership or equity in a publicly traded company

- Returns are variable and depend on the company's financial performance and overall market conditions
- Risks
 - Market risk: stock prices can be highly volatile and fluctuate based on various factors (economic conditions, investor sentiment)
 - Company-specific risk: the company may underperform due to internal issues or face bankruptcy in extreme cases
- Potential returns
 - Offer higher potential returns compared to bonds over the long term
 - Generate returns through capital appreciation as stock prices rise and dividend payments, if applicable (Apple, Amazon)
- Mutual funds
 - Key features
 - Professionally managed portfolios consisting of a diverse mix of stocks, bonds, or other securities
 - Provide instant diversification by investing in multiple securities across different sectors and asset classes
 - Offer a wide range of investment strategies (growth, value, income) and risk levels (conservative, aggressive) to suit various investor preferences
 - Risks
 - Market risk: the value of the mutual fund can decline in line with broader market conditions
 - Manager risk: the fund manager may make poor investment decisions leading to underperformance
- Potential returns
 - Returns vary depending on the type of mutual fund (equity, bond, balanced) and its underlying investments
 - Can provide a balance of growth and income while managing risk through diversification (Vanguard 500 Index Fund, Fidelity Contrafund)

Investment Calculations and Retirement Accounts

Calculating investment returns

- Return on Investment (ROI)
- Formula: $ROI = \frac{\text{Gain from Investment} - \text{Cost of Investment}}{\text{Cost of Investment}} \times 100\%$
- Measures the efficiency and profitability of an investment relative to its cost
- Example: If you invest 1,000 in a stock and its value grows to 1,200, the ROI is $\frac{1,200 - 1,000}{1,000} \times 100\% = 20\%$
- Annual Return
- Formula: $Annual\ Return = \left(1 + \frac{\text{Total Return}}{\text{Initial Investment}}\right)^{\frac{1}{n}} - 1$, where n is the number of years

- Measures the average yearly return of an investment over a specific period, accounting for compounding
- Example: If an investment grows from 1,000 to 1,610 over 5 years, the annual return is $(1 + \frac{610}{1,000})^{\frac{1}{5}} - 1 = 10\%$
- Compound Interest
- Formula: $A = P(1 + r)^n$, where A is the final amount, P is the principal, r is the annual interest rate, and n is the number of years
- Demonstrates how reinvesting earnings can significantly accelerate wealth accumulation over time

Characteristics of retirement accounts

- Traditional IRA 1. Contributions are tax-deductible in the year they are made, reducing the account holder's taxable income 2. Investment earnings grow tax-deferred until withdrawal, allowing for faster accumulation of wealth 3. Withdrawals in retirement are taxed as ordinary income, providing a source of taxable income in later years 4. Required Minimum Distributions (RMDs) must begin at age 72, ensuring that the account is used for retirement purposes
- Roth IRA 1. Contributions are made with after-tax dollars, allowing for tax-free growth and withdrawals in retirement 2. Investment earnings grow tax-free, providing a significant advantage for long-term wealth accumulation 3. Qualified withdrawals in retirement are tax-free, offering a source of tax-free income in later years 4. No RMDs are required during the account owner's lifetime, providing greater flexibility in retirement planning
- 401(k) 1. Employer-sponsored retirement plan that allows employees to save and invest a portion of their paycheck 2. Contributions are made with pre-tax dollars, reducing the employee's taxable income in the year of contribution 3. Investment earnings grow tax-deferred until withdrawal, fostering faster growth of retirement savings 4. Withdrawals in retirement are taxed as ordinary income, providing a source of taxable income in later years 5. Many employers offer matching contributions (50% of employee contributions up to 6% of salary), essentially providing free money for retirement 6. RMDs must begin at age 72 or upon retirement, whichever is later, ensuring that the account is used for its intended purpose

Investment Strategy and Risk Management

- Portfolio Management
- The process of selecting, monitoring, and adjusting a mix of investments to meet specific financial goals and risk tolerance
- Involves asset allocation, diversification, and rebalancing to maintain the desired risk-return profile
- Asset Allocation
- The strategic distribution of investments across different asset classes (e.g., stocks, bonds, cash) to balance risk and reward
- Tailored to an investor's goals, risk tolerance, and investment horizon
- Risk Tolerance
- An investor's ability and willingness to endure fluctuations in the value of their investments
- Influences the appropriate asset allocation and investment choices for an individual

- Liquidity
- The ease with which an investment can be converted to cash without significant loss of value
- Important consideration when choosing investments, especially for short-term financial needs
- Market Capitalization
- The total value of a company's outstanding shares, calculated by multiplying the share price by the number of shares
- Used to categorize stocks as large-cap, mid-cap, or small-cap, each with different risk and growth characteristics

6.8 The Basics of Loans

Loans are a crucial part of personal finance, helping us achieve big goals like buying a home or starting a business. Understanding loan basics, from interest rates to monthly payments, empowers us to make smart borrowing decisions.

Loan calculations may seem daunting, but they're key to grasping the true cost of borrowing. By mastering formulas for monthly payments and interest charges, we can compare options and avoid surprises down the road.

Loan Fundamentals

Reasons for loans and terminology

- Secure funds to purchase a home (mortgage) or finance a vehicle (auto loan)
- Pay for higher education expenses such as tuition, books, and living costs (student loans)
- Obtain capital to start or expand a business (business loans)
- Cover unexpected expenses like medical bills or home repairs (personal loans)
- Principal refers to the original amount borrowed from the lender
- Interest represents the cost of borrowing money, calculated as a percentage of the principal
- Annual Percentage Rate (APR) expresses the yearly cost of a loan, including interest and fees
- Loan term defines the length of time given to repay the loan (30-year mortgage)
- Monthly payment consists of a portion of the principal and interest paid each month
- Amortization gradually reduces the loan balance through regular payments over the loan term

Loan Types and Factors Affecting Approval

- Fixed-rate loans maintain the same interest rate throughout the loan term, providing predictable payments
- Variable-rate loans have interest rates that can fluctuate based on market conditions, potentially changing monthly payments
- Collateral is an asset pledged as security for a loan, reducing the lender's risk

- Credit score is a numerical representation of a borrower's creditworthiness, influencing loan approval and interest rates
- Debt-to-income ratio compares a borrower's monthly debt payments to their income, helping lenders assess affordability
- A cosigner is someone who agrees to be responsible for the loan if the primary borrower cannot make payments

Loan Calculations

Calculation of loan payments

- Monthly payment formula: $P = \frac{r(PV)}{1 - (1 + r)^{-n}}$ 1. P represents the monthly payment amount 2. PV is the present value or loan principal 3. r denotes the monthly interest rate (annual rate divided by 12) 4. n signifies the total number of monthly payments (loan term in years multiplied by 12)
- Interest charge formula: $I = P \times r$ 1. I represents the interest charge 2. P is the outstanding principal balance 3. r denotes the monthly interest rate
- Amortization tables break down each monthly payment into principal and interest components
- Over time, a larger portion of each payment goes towards the principal
- Simultaneously, a smaller portion of each payment is allocated to interest

Evaluation of total loan costs

- Total cost of financing a loan equals the sum of all monthly payments over the loan term
- Includes the principal amount borrowed and the total interest paid
- Additional costs to consider when evaluating a loan:
 - Origination fees charged by the lender for processing the loan application
 - Closing costs such as appraisal fees, title insurance, and attorney fees
 - Prepayment penalties imposed by some lenders for paying off the loan early
 - Compare loan options by examining the APR, which includes interest and fees
 - Carefully review loan terms and conditions to identify additional charges or penalties
 - Calculate the total cost of financing for each loan option to determine affordability

6.9 Understanding Student Loans

Student loans can be a lifeline for college, but they come with complexities. Federal loans offer more favorable terms, while private loans may have higher rates. Understanding the application process and loan types is crucial for making informed decisions.

Repayment options vary, from standard plans to income-driven alternatives. Calculating monthly payments and exploring consolidation can help manage debt. It's essential to stay on top of payments and communicate with loan servicers to avoid default and its consequences.

Types of Student Loans and Application Process

Process of student loan applications

- Federal student loans
- Subsidized loans
- Awarded based on demonstrated financial need determined by FAFSA
- Interest charges covered by the government while enrolled in school at least half-time and during grace periods (6 months after graduation)
- Unsubsidized loans
- Available regardless of financial need
- Interest begins accruing immediately after loan disbursement and continues throughout the life of the loan, including while in school
- PLUS loans
- Designed for graduate students or parents of dependent undergraduate students to cover additional education expenses
- Borrower assumes responsibility for all interest charges from the time of disbursement
- Private student loans
- Provided by financial institutions such as banks, credit unions, and specialized private student loan lenders
- Generally feature higher interest rates and more stringent repayment terms compared to federal loans
- Application process
- Submit the Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA) to determine eligibility for federal loans
- Apply directly through private lenders for non-federal loans
- School's financial aid office assesses loan eligibility and determines loan amounts based on the cost of attendance and other factors
- Review and sign a Master Promissory Note (MPN) outlining the terms and conditions of the loan repayment

Student Loan Calculations and Repayment Plans

Calculation of loan amounts and payments

- Loan amount
- Calculated as the total cost of attendance (tuition, fees, housing, etc.) minus other forms of financial aid (grants, scholarships) and the expected family contribution (EFC)
- Interest accrual
- Simple daily interest formula:
$$Interest = Principal \times (AnnualInterestRate/365) \times NumberOfDays$$

- Interest accrues on a daily basis and is capitalized (added to the principal balance) at regular intervals (such as quarterly or annually)
- Monthly payments
- Standard repayment plan: $MonthlyPayment = \frac{LoanAmount \times (1 + InterestRate)^{NumberOfPayments}}{(1 + InterestRate)^{NumberOfPayments} - 1}$
- Graduated repayment plan: Starts with lower initial payments that gradually increase over the course of the repayment term
- Extended repayment plan: Offers lower monthly payments by extending the repayment period up to 25 years, depending on the total loan balance
- Income-driven repayment plans
- Monthly payments calculated as a percentage of the borrower's discretionary income and adjusted based on family size
- Common income-driven plans include Income-Based Repayment (IBR), Pay As You Earn (PAYE), and Revised Pay As You Earn (REPAYE)

Comparison of loan repayment options

- Income-driven repayment plans
- Eligibility determined by income level and family size
- Provides lower monthly payments but may result in higher total interest paid over the life of the loan
- Remaining loan balance may be eligible for forgiveness after 20-25 years of qualifying payments, depending on the specific plan
- Requires annual income recertification to maintain eligibility
- Loan consolidation
- Allows borrowers to combine multiple federal loans into a single Direct Consolidation Loan
- Interest rate is calculated as the weighted average of the interest rates of the original loans, rounded up to the nearest one-eighth of a percent
- Can potentially lower monthly payments by extending the repayment term
- May make certain loans eligible for income-driven repayment plans or loan forgiveness programs that were previously not eligible
- Potential consequences
- Opting for longer repayment terms can result in paying more in total interest over the life of the loan
- Failing to make payments on time can lead to default, which can have severe negative impacts on credit scores and overall financial well-being
- In some cases, forgiven loan balances may be considered taxable income, resulting in a significant tax liability

Managing Student Loan Repayment

- Grace period: A set time after graduation or dropping below half-time enrollment during which borrowers are not required to make payments on their loans
- Deferment and forbearance options
- Deferment: A temporary postponement of loan payments, often granted for specific circumstances such as returning to school or economic hardship
- Forbearance: A temporary suspension or reduction of payments for borrowers experiencing financial difficulties
- Loan servicer: The company assigned by the Department of Education to handle billing and other services for federal student loans
- Default: Occurs when a borrower fails to make payments for an extended period, typically 270 days for federal loans
- Can result in wage garnishment, loss of eligibility for additional federal student aid, and damage to credit score
- Strategies to avoid default
- Communicate with your loan servicer about repayment difficulties
- Consider income-driven repayment plans to lower monthly payments
- Explore deferment or forbearance options if facing temporary financial hardship

6.10 Credit Cards

Credit cards come in various types, each with unique features. Bank-issued cards offer wide acceptance and rewards, while store cards provide specific perks for loyal customers. Travel cards cater to frequent flyers, offering miles and travel benefits.

Understanding credit card calculations is crucial for managing finances. Average daily balance determines interest charges, while total balance due considers all transactions. Knowing statement components like payment due dates and minimum payments helps avoid fees and maintain good credit standing.

Types of Credit Cards

Types of credit cards

- Bank-issued credit cards
- Issued by financial institutions (banks, credit unions)
- Accepted at a wide variety of merchants and locations
- Often provide rewards programs (cashback, points)
- Generally have higher credit limits than store-issued cards
- Typically offer lower interest rates compared to store-issued credit cards
- May charge an annual fee for premium features or rewards programs
- Store-issued credit cards

- Issued by retailers (department stores, specialty shops)
- Can only be used for purchases at the issuing store or its affiliates
- Often have more lenient credit requirements compared to bank-issued cards
- May provide discounts, loyalty rewards, or exclusive promotions for cardholders
- Generally charge higher interest rates than bank-issued credit cards
- Travel/entertainment credit cards
- Tailored for frequent travelers or those who spend on entertainment
- Often provide rewards in the form of miles, points, or travel perks
- May offer additional benefits (travel insurance, airport lounge access, hotel discounts)
- Typically charge higher annual fees compared to other credit card types
- Usually require good to excellent credit scores for approval

Credit Card Calculations and Statements

Credit card balance calculations

- Average daily balance
- Calculated by summing the daily balances for each day in the billing cycle and dividing by the number of days
- Daily balance is computed by starting with the previous day's balance, adding new charges, and subtracting payments or credits
- Used by credit card issuers to determine the amount of interest to charge
- Interest charges
- Calculated by multiplying the average daily balance by the monthly periodic rate
- Monthly periodic rate is derived by dividing the annual percentage rate (APR) by 12
- Formula: $InterestCharges = AverageDailyBalance \times (APR \div 12)$
- Total balance due
- Calculated by adding the previous balance, new purchases, interest charges, and any fees
- Subtracting any payments or credits applied during the billing cycle
- Formula:

$$TotalBalanceDue = PreviousBalance + NewPurchases + InterestCharges + Fees - Payments - Credits$$

Credit card statement components

- Payment due date
- Deadline by which the credit card issuer must receive at least the minimum payment to avoid late fees
- Making payments after this date may result in late fees and negative impacts on credit scores

- Grace period: The time between the end of a billing cycle and the payment due date, during which no interest is charged on new purchases if the previous balance was paid in full
- Minimum payment
- The smallest amount that must be paid by the due date to maintain the account in good standing
- Usually calculated as a percentage of the total balance or a fixed dollar amount
- Making only the minimum payment can lead to longer repayment periods and higher total interest paid
- Consequences of only making minimum payments
- Extends the time needed to pay off the balance
- Increases the total interest charges over the life of the debt
- May negatively impact credit scores due to high credit utilization
- Can make it difficult to manage overall financial obligations due to prolonged debt repayment

Additional Credit Card Features and Considerations

- Cash advances: Allows cardholders to withdraw cash from their credit limit, often with higher interest rates and no grace period
- Balance transfers: The process of moving debt from one credit card to another, often with promotional low or zero interest rates for a limited time
- Credit score: A numerical representation of a person's creditworthiness, which can affect credit card approval, interest rates, and credit limits

6.11 Buying or Leasing a Car

Buying a car involves big decisions. Do you purchase or lease? Each option has pros and cons. Purchasing builds equity but costs more monthly. Leasing offers lower payments but no ownership.

Car ownership isn't just about the sticker price. You must factor in loans, interest rates, insurance, and maintenance. Understanding these costs helps you make a smart choice that fits your budget and lifestyle.

Buying a Car

Purchasing vs leasing vehicles

- Purchasing a car involves taking ownership of the vehicle after completing all loan payments, allowing you to modify or sell the car as desired
- Purchasing typically results in higher monthly payments compared to leasing but builds equity in the vehicle as you pay off the loan without any mileage restrictions or wear-and-tear fees
- Leasing a car means you do not own the vehicle and must return it at the end of the lease term, essentially renting it long-term
- Leasing offers lower monthly payments compared to purchasing but builds no equity in the vehicle and comes with mileage restrictions (12,000 miles per year) and potential wear-and-tear fees

Total cost of car ownership

- The total cost of purchasing a car is affected by the purchase price, sales tax and other fees (registration, documentation), down payment amount, loan term length in months, and Annual Percentage Rate (APR) of the loan
- Monthly loan payments can be calculated using the formula: $MonthlyPayment = \frac{P * (r * (1 + r)^n)}{((1 + r)^n - 1)}$ where P is the loan amount (purchase price - down payment), r is the monthly interest rate (APR / 12), and n is the number of monthly payments (loan term)
- The total cost of purchasing the car is the sum of the down payment, all monthly loan payments, and additional fees and taxes
- Consider the trade-in value of your current vehicle, which can be applied towards the purchase of a new car, potentially reducing the overall cost

Additional factors affecting car ownership

- Your credit score plays a crucial role in determining the interest rate you'll receive on a car loan
- Insurance costs vary based on factors such as the car's make and model, your driving history, and coverage level
- Regular maintenance costs (e.g., oil changes, tire rotations) should be factored into the overall expense of owning a vehicle

Leasing a Car

Components of car lease agreements

- Key components of a car lease agreement include: 1. Down payment (capitalized cost reduction) - an upfront payment that reduces the overall cost of the lease 2. Monthly lease payment - consists of a depreciation fee $((\text{Negotiated price} - \text{Residual value}) / \text{Lease term})$ and a finance fee $((\text{Negotiated price} + \text{Residual value}) * \text{Money factor})$ 3. Residual value - the estimated value of the vehicle at the end of the lease term determined by the leasing company based on expected depreciation 4. Mileage limits - the maximum number of miles allowed per year without incurring additional fees, commonly 10,000, 12,000, or 15,000 miles per year 5. Disposition fee - charged at the end of the lease to cover the cost of cleaning and reselling the vehicle 6. Wear-and-tear guidelines - outline the acceptable condition of the vehicle upon lease return, with excessive wear-and-tear potentially resulting in additional fees
- Negotiation skills can be valuable in securing better terms for your lease agreement, such as a lower monthly payment or increased mileage allowance

6.12 Renting and Homeownership

Renting vs. buying a home is a big decision with major financial implications. Renting offers flexibility and fewer responsibilities, while buying builds equity and provides potential tax benefits. Both options have pros and cons to consider.

Mortgages are key to homeownership, involving complex calculations and long-term commitments. Understanding mortgage payments, amortization, and additional costs like property taxes and insurance is crucial for making informed decisions about buying a home.

Renting vs. Buying a Home

Renting vs buying: Financial implications

- Renting involves monthly costs that include rent payments and possibly utilities (electricity, water, gas)
- Renting offers more flexibility to move or change living situations as leases are typically shorter-term commitments (1-2 years)
- Renting does not provide long-term financial benefits or the opportunity to build equity in a property
- Renters are not responsible for maintenance or repair costs as these are typically handled by the landlord or property management
- Buying a home involves monthly costs that include mortgage payments, property taxes, homeowners insurance, and ongoing maintenance expenses (repairs, upgrades)
- Buying a home offers potential long-term financial benefits through equity building as the home value appreciates over time (increased net worth)
- Homeowners can take advantage of tax benefits such as deducting mortgage interest and property taxes from their taxable income (lowering overall tax liability)
- Buying a home provides less flexibility to move or change living situations as selling a property can be a lengthy and costly process
- Homeowners are responsible for all maintenance and repair costs which can be significant expenses over time (roof replacement, HVAC repairs)
- The real estate market conditions can affect both renting and buying decisions, influencing property values and rental rates

Mortgage calculations and total costs

- The mortgage payment formula calculates the monthly payment based on the loan amount, interest rate, and loan term: $M = P \left[\frac{i(1+i)^n}{(1+i)^n - 1} \right]$
- M represents the monthly mortgage payment
- P represents the principal loan amount borrowed from the lender
- i represents the monthly interest rate calculated by dividing the annual rate by 12 (4% annual rate = 0.0033 monthly rate)
- n represents the total number of payments calculated by multiplying the loan term in years by 12 (30-year loan = 360 payments)
- Amortization tables provide a breakdown of each monthly payment showing the portion applied to principal and interest over the life of the loan
- In the early years of the loan, a larger portion of each payment is applied to interest rather than principal (front-loaded interest)
- As the loan progresses, a larger portion of each payment is applied to principal, gradually increasing equity in the property (back-loaded principal)
- The total cost of the loan includes the sum of all monthly payments made over the entire loan term (principal + interest) which is significantly higher than the original loan amount

- Closing costs are additional expenses incurred when finalizing a home purchase, typically ranging from 2-5% of the loan amount

Key components of homeownership

- Mortgages are loans used to purchase a home with the property serving as collateral securing the loan (bank can foreclose if payments are not made) 1. Mortgages are typically repaid over a 15 or 30-year term with either fixed interest rates that remain constant or adjustable rates that can change over time 2. Lenders assess the creditworthiness of borrowers and require a down payment that is a percentage of the home value (20% down payment on a \$200,000 home = \$40,000) 3. Common types of mortgages include conventional loans, FHA loans, and VA loans each with different requirements and benefits (lower down payment, lower credit score) 4. A borrower's credit score plays a crucial role in determining mortgage eligibility and interest rates
- Escrow accounts are managed by the mortgage servicer to pay property tax and insurance premiums on behalf of the homeowner
- Funds for the escrow account are collected as part of the monthly mortgage payment and held in reserve (1/12 of annual tax and insurance bill added to mortgage payment)
- Escrow accounts help homeowners budget for these significant expenses and ensure timely payments to avoid penalties or lapses in coverage
- Property taxes are assessed by local governments based on the value of the property and used to fund public services (schools, roads, emergency services)
- Property tax rates can vary widely depending on the location and value of the property (1% tax rate on a \$200,000 home = \$2,000 annual tax bill)
- Failure to pay property taxes can result in liens or foreclosure on the property by the government (loss of ownership)
- Home appraisals are often used to determine property value for tax assessment purposes

Additional homeownership considerations

- Equity: The difference between the home's market value and the outstanding mortgage balance, representing the homeowner's ownership stake
- Homeowners Association (HOA): Some properties are part of communities with HOAs that charge fees for shared amenities and enforce community rules
- Private Mortgage Insurance (PMI): Required for conventional loans with less than 20% down payment, protecting the lender against default

6.13 Income Tax

Income tax is a complex system that affects everyone's finances. It's based on your total earnings, with deductions and credits reducing what you owe. Understanding the basics helps you make informed financial decisions and plan for tax season.

The U.S. uses a progressive tax system, meaning higher earners pay a larger percentage. Knowing how to calculate your taxable income and apply credits can potentially save you money. It's crucial to stay updated on tax laws and filing requirements.

Income Tax Fundamentals

Components of taxable income

- Gross income encompasses all income from various sources such as wages, salaries, tips, interest, dividends, alimony received, business income, rental income, and capital gains
- Non-taxable items like gifts, inheritances, and certain benefits are excluded from gross income
- Adjusted gross income (AGI) is calculated by subtracting adjustments (educator expenses, student loan interest, alimony paid) from gross income and serves as the basis for determining many tax benefits and limitations
- Taxable income is calculated by subtracting deductions and exemptions from AGI
- Deductions can be either the standard deduction, a fixed amount based on filing status, or itemized deductions (mortgage interest, state and local taxes, charitable contributions)
- Personal exemptions are suspended for tax years 2018-2025 due to the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act

Calculation of income tax

- The U.S. has a progressive tax system with increasing tax rates for higher income levels, and tax brackets are adjusted annually for inflation
- Marginal tax rate applies to income within each bracket
- Income tax owed is calculated by: 1. Multiplying taxable income within each bracket by the corresponding tax rate 2. Summing the results to determine total income tax owed
- Tax credits directly reduce the amount of tax owed, dollar-for-dollar, with examples including the Earned Income Tax Credit (EITC), Child Tax Credit, and education credits
- Some credits are refundable, meaning they can reduce tax owed below zero, resulting in a refund

Tax Reporting and Payments

- Withholding tax is deducted from an employee's paycheck to cover their estimated income tax liability
- Taxpayers file a tax return annually to report their income, deductions, and credits
- A tax refund is issued when the amount of taxes paid through withholding or estimated payments exceeds the actual tax liability
- Tax credits reduce the amount of tax owed directly, while tax deductions reduce taxable income

Payroll Taxes

FICA tax computation

- FICA (Federal Insurance Contributions Act) taxes consist of Social Security and Medicare taxes, which are a shared responsibility between employees and employers
- Social Security tax:
 - Employee contribution is 6.2% of gross wages up to the Social Security wage base (\$160,200 for 2023)

- Employer matches the employee contribution
- Medicare tax:
 - Employee contribution is 1.45% of all gross wages with no wage base limit
 - Employer matches the employee contribution
 - Additional Medicare tax of 0.9% is applied on wages above \$200,000 (single) or \$250,000 (married filing jointly) and is paid solely by the employee
 - Self-employed individuals are responsible for both the employee and employer portions of FICA taxes (12.4% for Social Security and 2.9% for Medicare) but can deduct half of self-employment taxes as an adjustment to income

Unit 7 – Probability

7.1 The Multiplication Rule for Counting

Counting techniques help us figure out how many ways things can happen. The Multiplication Rule is a key tool, letting us calculate possibilities when we have multiple independent choices to make.

This rule is super useful in everyday life. It helps us count outfit combinations, meal options at restaurants, and even possible PIN numbers. Understanding this concept opens doors to solving more complex probability problems.

The Multiplication Rule for Counting

Multiplication Rule for simple outcomes

- States if there are n_1 ways to make one choice and n_2 ways to make a second independent choice, then there are $n_1 \times n_2$ ways to make both choices
- 3 shirts and 4 pairs of pants results in $3 \times 4 = 12$ possible outfits
- Extends to more than two independent choices
- n_1 ways for first choice, n_2 ways for second choice, and n_3 ways for third choice results in $n_1 \times n_2 \times n_3$ ways to make all three choices
- 2 hat styles, 3 shirt colors, 5 pant designs yields $2 \times 3 \times 5 = 30$ possible combinations
- Requires choices to be independent where the outcome of one choice does not affect the number of options for other choices
- Choosing a shirt does not change the number of available pants
- This concept is also known as the fundamental counting principle

Complex scenarios with Multiplication Rule

- Identify the number of options for each independent choice
- Restaurant offers 5 appetizers, 8 main courses, and 3 desserts
- Multiply the number of options for each choice to find the total possible combinations
- Restaurant example: $5 \times 8 \times 3 = 120$ possible meal combinations
- Consider all relevant choices and their respective options for an accurate count
- Including 4 drink options, total possible meal combinations becomes $5 \times 8 \times 3 \times 4 = 480$
- Useful for determining the number of possible outcomes in various scenarios (course schedules, travel itineraries, product configurations)
- Can be visually represented using a tree diagram to show all possible outcomes

Word problems using Multiplication Rule

- Read the problem carefully to identify independent choices and their options

- Car can be ordered with a choice of 4 colors, 3 engine types, and 2 transmission types
- Organize information by listing each choice and its options 1. Color: 4 options 2. Engine type: 3 options 3. Transmission type: 2 options
- Apply Multiplication Rule by multiplying the number of options for each choice
- Total configurations = $4 \times 3 \times 2 = 24$
- Verify all relevant choices have been considered and choices are independent
- Adding 2 interior fabric options results in $4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 2 = 48$ total configurations
- Break down complex problems into simpler components and apply Multiplication Rule to each part
- Number of possible 4-digit PINs: $10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 = 10,000$ (0-9 for each digit)

Additional Counting Concepts

- Permutations: arrangements of objects where order matters
- Factorial: used to calculate the number of permutations, denoted as $n!$
- Sample space: the set of all possible outcomes in a probability experiment

7.2 Permutations

Permutations are all about arranging things in different orders. They help us count how many ways we can line up objects or pick items in a specific sequence. This concept is super useful for solving real-world problems and understanding probabilities.

We use factorial notation and special formulas to calculate permutations. These tools let us figure out things like how many ways to arrange letters in a word or pick winners in a contest. It's a key part of discrete math and probability theory.

Permutations

Factorial formula for permutations

- Calculates the number of ways to arrange n distinct objects in a specific order
- Multiplies all positive integers from 1 up to n (5 objects: $5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 120$ arrangements)
- Accounts for repeated objects by dividing $n!$ by the factorial of each repeated object's count
- Arranging "MISSISSIPPI" (4 I's, 4 S's, 2 P's, 1 M): $\frac{11!}{4! \times 4! \times 2! \times 1!} = 34,650$ unique permutations
- Eliminates duplicate arrangements caused by identical objects (e.g., swapping positions of two I's)
- Utilizes set theory principles to define the elements being arranged

Permutation notation for subsets

- Denotes the number of ways to select and arrange r objects from a set of n distinct objects
- Notated as $P(n, r)$ or ${}_nP_r$, calculated as $\frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$
- Choosing 3 people from a group of 7 to stand in a line: $P(7, 3) = \frac{7!}{(7-3)!} = 210$ possible arrangements

- Applies when order matters and repetition is not allowed
- Arranging books on a shelf, selecting contest winners (first, second, third place)
- Contrasts with combinations, where order doesn't matter

Permutations in probability problems

1. Determine the total number of possible outcomes (n) and desired outcomes (r)
2. Calculate the number of ways the desired outcome can occur using the appropriate permutation formula
3. Divide the number of desired outcomes by the total outcomes to find the probability - Winning a lottery by matching 6 numbers drawn from 49 in the correct order: - Total outcomes:

$$P(49, 6) = \frac{49!}{(49-6)!} = 10,068,347,520$$
- Desired outcome: 1 (only one way to match all 6 numbers in the correct order) - Probability: $\frac{1}{10,068,347,520} \approx 9.93 \times 10^{-11}$ (about 1 in 10 billion) -
 Permutations help calculate probabilities for ordered outcomes (e.g., horse race results, card hands)

Related Concepts in Discrete Mathematics

- Counting techniques: Permutations are a fundamental counting method in discrete mathematics
- Probability: Permutations are essential for calculating probabilities of ordered events
- Combinations: Another counting technique used when order doesn't matter, complementing permutations

7.3 Combinations

Combinations are a key concept in counting problems. They help us figure out how many ways we can select items from a group when the order doesn't matter. This is super useful in real-life situations, like picking team members or choosing pizza toppings.

Understanding combinations is crucial for tackling more complex probability and statistics problems. By mastering this concept, you'll be better equipped to analyze data, make predictions, and solve practical math problems in various fields, from business to science.

Combinations

Combinations without order

- Combinations select items from a collection where order does not matter
- Selecting a team of 3 students from a class of 20 (Alice, Bob, Charlie is the same as Charlie, Alice, Bob)
- Choosing 2 toppings from 5 options for a pizza (pepperoni and mushroom is the same as mushroom and pepperoni)
- Denoted as $C(n, r)$ or $\binom{n}{r}$ where:
- n is the total number of items in the set
- r is the number of items being selected
- Formula for combinations: $C(n, r) = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$

- $n!$ is the factorial of n , the product of all positive integers less than or equal to n ($5! = 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 = 120$)
- $r!$ is the factorial of r
- $(n - r)!$ is the factorial of $n - r$
- To calculate combinations: 1. Identify the total items n and the number to select r 2. Plug n and r into the formula $\frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$ 3. Simplify the factorials and calculate the result
- Example: Selecting 2 fruits from a basket of 5 fruits
- $n = 5$ (total fruits) and $r = 2$ (fruits selected)
- $C(5, 2) = \frac{5!}{2!(5-2)!} = \frac{5!}{2!3!} = \frac{5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3!}{2 \cdot 1 \cdot 3!} = 10$
- There are 10 ways to select 2 fruits from 5 fruits where order doesn't matter
- Combinations are fundamental to set theory, as they help determine the number of subsets of a given size from a larger set

Permutations vs combinations

- Permutations consider the order of selection, combinations do not
- Permutation: Arranging the letters A, B, C (ABC, ACB, BAC, BCA, CAB, CBA are all different)
- Combination: Selecting 2 toppings from cheese, pepperoni, mushroom (cheese and pepperoni is the same as pepperoni and cheese)
- Use permutations when:
 - Order matters
 - Each item is distinct and used only once
 - Arranging books on a shelf (Moby Dick then Huckleberry Finn is different than Huckleberry Finn then Moby Dick)
- Use combinations when:
 - Order does not matter
 - Items are not distinct or can be used multiple times
 - Selecting 3 toppings for a pizza from 8 options (mushroom, pepperoni, olive is the same as olive, mushroom, pepperoni)
- To decide between permutations and combinations: 1. Determine if order matters 2. Check if items are distinct or can be repeated
- Example: Making a 4-digit PIN code using digits 0-9
- Order matters (1234 is a different PIN than 4321)
- Digits can be repeated (1111 is a valid PIN)
- This requires permutations with repetition, not combinations

Applications of combination formula

1. Identify the total items n and number to select r
2. Substitute n and r into the formula $\frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$
3. Simplify factorials by canceling common terms in numerator and denominator
4. Calculate the final result to get the number of combinations - Example: A sundae bar has 10 toppings. How many 4-topping sundaes are possible? - $n = 10$ toppings total, $r = 4$ toppings per sundae - $C(10, 4) = \frac{10!}{4!(10-4)!} = \frac{10!}{4!6!} = \frac{10 \cdot 9 \cdot 8 \cdot 7 \cdot 6!}{4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 \cdot 6!} = 210$ - There are 210 different ways to make a 4-topping sundae from 10 toppings - Example: A jury of 12 must be selected from 50 candidates. How many possible juries are there? - $n = 50$ candidates, $r = 12$ jurors - $C(50, 12) = \frac{50!}{12!(50-12)!} = \frac{50!}{12!38!} \approx 1.24 \times 10^{10}$ - There are approximately 1.24×10^{10} possible 12-person juries from 50 candidates - Combinations are essential in probability calculations, especially when determining the number of ways to select a sample from a larger population

Combinatorics and Counting Principles

- Combinatorics is the branch of mathematics dealing with counting, arrangement, and combination of objects
- The fundamental counting principle states that if one event can occur in m ways, and another independent event can occur in n ways, then the two events can occur together in $m \times n$ ways
- Sampling techniques in statistics often rely on combinations to determine the number of possible samples from a population
- Combinations play a crucial role in various fields, including probability theory and statistical analysis

7.4 Tree Diagrams, Tables, and Outcomes

Tree diagrams and tables are powerful tools for visualizing probability outcomes. They help break down complex scenarios into manageable parts, making it easier to calculate and understand the likelihood of different events occurring.

These visual aids are especially useful for multi-stage experiments. By mapping out all possible outcomes, we can more easily identify the sample space and calculate probabilities for specific events or combinations of events.

Probability with Tree Diagrams and Tables

Tree diagrams for probability outcomes

- Visually represent possible outcomes of a probability experiment
- Branches represent possible outcomes (coin flip - heads or tails)
- Probabilities written along each branch (heads - 0.5, tails - 0.5)
- Create by identifying first event and listing all possible outcomes
- For each outcome, identify second event and list possible outcomes
- Continue for all subsequent events (first flip - heads or tails, second flip - heads or tails)
- Multiply probabilities along each path to find probability of specific outcome (multiplication rule)

- Two heads in a row: $0.5 \times 0.5 = 0.25$
- Sum of probabilities of all outcomes equals 1
- Ensures all possible outcomes accounted for
- Validates tree diagram construction

Tables for independent event combinations

- Organize and display all possible combinations of two independent events
- Rows represent outcomes of one event (die roll - 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6)
- Columns represent outcomes of other event (coin flip - heads, tails)
- Construct by listing outcomes of first event in first column
- List outcomes of second event in first row
- Fill in cells with corresponding outcome combinations (1 and heads, 1 and tails, etc.)
- Total number of combinations is product of number of outcomes for each event
- Die (6 outcomes) and coin (2 outcomes): $6 \times 2 = 12$ total combinations
- Helps visualize and count all possible combinations systematically

Sample space in multi-stage experiments

- Set of all possible outcomes of a probability experiment
- Multi-stage experiments include all combinations of outcomes from each stage
- List using tree diagram by following each path from start to end
- Each complete path represents one outcome (coin flip then die roll: heads and 1, heads and 2, etc.)
- List using table by considering each cell as one outcome
- Each unique row-column pair is an outcome in the sample space
- Number of outcomes equals product of number of outcomes at each stage
- Two-stage experiment with 2 outcomes in first stage and 3 in second: $2 \times 3 = 6$ outcomes
- Crucial for calculating probabilities and understanding scope of experiment

Additional Probability Concepts

- Conditional probability: Probability of an event occurring given that another event has already occurred
- Mutually exclusive events: Events that cannot occur simultaneously
- Venn diagram: Graphical representation of set relationships, useful for visualizing probability concepts
- Addition rule: Used to calculate the probability of either one event or another occurring

7.5 Basic Concepts of Probability

Probability is all about predicting outcomes. It's like having a crystal ball, but instead of magic, we use math. We'll learn how to calculate chances using ratios, data, and even gut feelings.

We'll also discover the complement rule, which helps us find probabilities by looking at what's left over. Plus, we'll touch on some fancier concepts like independence and expected value. It's like becoming a mathematical fortune-teller!

Probability Fundamentals

Ratio for theoretical probabilities

- Assumes equally likely outcomes for events
- Identifies total number of possible outcomes in the sample space
- Determines number of favorable outcomes for the specific event
- Calculates probability using the ratio $P(\text{event}) = \frac{\text{number of favorable outcomes}}{\text{total number of possible outcomes}}$
- Simplifies the ratio to lowest terms or converts to decimal or percentage (coin flip, $P(\text{heads}) = \frac{1}{2}$ or 0.5 or 50%)

Methods of probability assignment

- Theoretical probability uses mathematical reasoning assuming equally likely outcomes
- Calculates using the ratio $P(\text{event}) = \frac{\text{number of favorable outcomes}}{\text{total number of possible outcomes}}$ (rolling a 3 on a fair die, $P(3) = \frac{1}{6}$)
- Empirical (experimental) probability based on data from actual experiments or simulations
- Calculates using the ratio $P(\text{event}) = \frac{\text{number of times the event occurs}}{\text{total number of trials}}$ (flipping a coin 100 times with 55 heads, $P(\text{heads}) = \frac{55}{100} = 0.55$)
- Approaches theoretical probability as number of trials increases (law of large numbers)
- Subjective probability relies on personal beliefs, opinions, judgments about likelihood
- Not based on mathematical reasoning or observed data (estimating the probability of a favorite sports team winning a championship)

Complement rule in probability

- The complement of event A (A' or $\bar{A}$) is all outcomes in sample space not in A
- Complement rule: $P(A) = 1 - P(A')$ or $P(A') = 1 - P(A)$
- Calculates probability of an event by finding probability of its complement
- Useful when the complement is easier to calculate or more intuitive
- Examples: 1. Drawing an ace from a standard deck of 52 cards
 $P(\text{ace}) = \frac{4}{52} = \frac{1}{13}$, $P(\text{not ace}) = 1 - \frac{1}{13} = \frac{12}{13}$ 2. Selecting a defective product from a batch of 1000 with 10 defects

$$P(\text{defect}) = \frac{10}{1000} = 0.01, P(\text{not defect}) = 1 - 0.01 = 0.99$$

Advanced Probability Concepts

- Independence: Events A and B are independent if the occurrence of one does not affect the probability of the other
- Conditional probability: The probability of an event A occurring, given that another event B has already occurred
- Expected value: The average outcome of an experiment if it is repeated many times
- Mutually exclusive events: Two events that cannot occur simultaneously (e.g., rolling an even number and an odd number on a single die roll)
- Random variable: A variable whose possible values are outcomes of a random phenomenon

7.6 Probability with Permutations and Combinations

Probability concepts help us calculate the likelihood of events occurring. We explore permutations for ordered scenarios and combinations for unordered ones, using formulas to determine possible outcomes and their probabilities.

Applying probability rules allows us to solve complex problems. We use multiplication and addition rules for different event types, and learn to break down complex scenarios into manageable steps, combining results to find final probabilities.

Probability Concepts

Permutations for ordered probabilities

- Permutations calculate probabilities when order matters (drawing letters from Scrabble tiles to form a word)
- Formula for permutations: $P(n, r) = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$
- n represents total number of items to choose from
- r represents number of items being chosen
- Calculating probability of a specific permutation:
- Determine number of permutations satisfying desired outcome
- Divide this number by total possible permutations
- Examples:
- Arranging books on a shelf
- Assigning tasks to team members
- Determining possible PIN codes

Combinations in unordered scenarios

- Combinations calculate probabilities when order is irrelevant (drawing a hand of cards from a standard deck)

- Formula for combinations: $C(n, r) = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$
- n represents total number of items to choose from
- r represents number of items being chosen
- Calculating probability of a specific combination:
- Determine number of combinations satisfying desired outcome
- Divide this number by total possible combinations
- Examples:
- Selecting a committee from a group of people
- Choosing toppings for a pizza
- Forming teams for a tournament

Applying Probability Rules

Multiplication rule for complex probabilities

- Multiplication rule for independent events: $P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A) \times P(B)$
- Probability of both events occurring equals product of individual probabilities
- Multiplication rule for dependent events: $P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A) \times P(B|A)$
- Probability of both events occurring equals product of first event's probability and conditional probability of second event given first occurred
- Addition rule for mutually exclusive events: $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B)$
- Probability of either event occurring equals sum of individual probabilities
- Addition rule for non-mutually exclusive events: $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$
- Probability of either event occurring equals sum of individual probabilities minus probability of both events occurring
- Complement rule: $P(A') = 1 - P(A)$
- Probability of an event not occurring equals 1 minus the probability of it occurring
- Solving complex probability problems: 1. Break problem into smaller, manageable steps 2. Identify whether permutations or combinations are required for each step 3. Apply appropriate probability rules (multiplication, addition) as needed 4. Combine results of each step to determine final probability
- Examples:
- Calculating probability of drawing specific cards from a deck
- Determining likelihood of multiple events occurring in a sequence
- Analyzing probability of winning a lottery

Additional Probability Concepts

- Sample space: The set of all possible outcomes in a probability experiment

- Conditional probability: The probability of an event occurring given that another event has already occurred
- Expected value: The average outcome of an experiment if it is repeated many times
- Law of large numbers: As the number of trials in an experiment increases, the experimental probability approaches the theoretical probability

7.7 What Are the Odds?

Odds and probabilities help us understand the likelihood of events happening. They're used in gambling, finance, and everyday decisions. Knowing how to calculate and interpret odds can give you an edge in making informed choices.

Converting between odds and probabilities is a useful skill. It allows you to compare different ways of expressing chances and helps in risk assessment. Understanding these concepts can improve your decision-making in various aspects of life.

Probability and Odds

Odds calculation using ratios

- Express the likelihood of an event occurring using odds, a ratio of favorable outcomes to unfavorable outcomes
- Write odds as a ratio, such as 1:5 for rolling a 3 on a die (one favorable outcome, five unfavorable outcomes)
- Calculate odds from probabilities using formulas
- Odds in favor of an event: $\frac{P(E)}{1 - P(E)}$, where $P(E)$ represents the probability of the event
- Odds against an event: $\frac{1 - P(E)}{P(E)}$
- Calculate odds from outcomes using ratios
- Odds in favor of an event: $\frac{\text{number of favorable outcomes}}{\text{number of unfavorable outcomes}}$
- Flipping a coin and getting heads (1 favorable outcome, 1 unfavorable outcome) has odds of 1:1
- Odds against an event: $\frac{\text{number of unfavorable outcomes}}{\text{number of favorable outcomes}}$
- Drawing a red card from a standard deck (26 unfavorable outcomes, 26 favorable outcomes) has odds of 1:1 against
- Consider conditional probability when calculating odds for events that depend on other events

Conversion between odds and probabilities

- Convert odds to probabilities using formulas
- Probability of an event given odds in favor: $\frac{\text{odds in favor}}{1 + \text{odds in favor}}$
- If the odds in favor of an event are 3:1, the probability is $\frac{3}{1+3} = \frac{3}{4} = 0.75$
- Probability of an event given odds against: $\frac{1}{1 + \text{odds against}}$
- If the odds against an event are 2:1, the probability is $\frac{1}{1+2} = \frac{1}{3} \approx 0.33$

- Convert probabilities to odds using formulas
- Odds in favor of an event: $\frac{P(E)}{1 - P(E)}$
- If the probability of an event is 0.6, the odds in favor are $\frac{0.6}{1 - 0.6} = \frac{0.6}{0.4} = 1.5 : 1$
- Odds against an event: $\frac{1 - P(E)}{P(E)}$
- If the probability of an event is 0.2, the odds against are $\frac{1 - 0.2}{0.2} = \frac{0.8}{0.2} = 4 : 1$

Interpretation of odds in context

- Describe the likelihood of events using odds and probabilities in various real-world situations
- Gambling: Express the likelihood of winning or losing a bet using odds
- In a horse race, odds of 3:1 for a particular horse winning mean there are three unfavorable outcomes for every favorable outcome
- Lotteries: Describe the likelihood of winning a lottery prize using probabilities
- In a lottery where you pick 6 numbers out of 49, the probability of winning the jackpot is approximately 1 in 13,983,816 (very low)
- Make informed decisions based on understanding odds and probabilities
- Avoid investing large amounts of money in games with very low odds of winning
- Compare odds and probabilities when making choices (insurance plans, medical treatments)
- Use statistical inference to draw conclusions about populations based on sample data and probabilities

Probability concepts and applications

- Understand randomness as the unpredictability of individual outcomes in probability experiments
- Apply the law of large numbers to explain how probabilities stabilize over many trials
- Use probability distributions to model the likelihood of different outcomes in various scenarios

7.8 The Addition Rule for Probability

The Addition Rule for Probability helps us calculate the chances of multiple events happening. It's like figuring out how likely you are to win a game by adding up your different ways to win.

For events that can't happen at the same time, we just add their individual chances. But for events that could overlap, we need to subtract the chance of them happening together. This helps us avoid counting the same outcome twice.

The Addition Rule for Probability

Addition rule for mutually exclusive events

- States the probability of either event A or event B occurring is the sum of their individual probabilities:
 $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B)$

- Only applies when events A and B are mutually exclusive meaning they cannot occur simultaneously (flipping a coin and getting heads or tails)
- To calculate the probability of a compound event using this rule: 1. Determine the individual probabilities of each event 2. Add the individual probabilities together to find the probability of the compound event
- Examples:
 - If the probability of rolling a 1 on a fair die is $\frac{1}{6}$ and the probability of rolling a 2 is also $\frac{1}{6}$, the probability of rolling either a 1 or a 2 is $\frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$
 - The probability of drawing a red card or a black card from a standard deck is $\frac{26}{52} + \frac{26}{52} = 1$ since there are 26 red cards and 26 black cards in a 52-card deck
 - The complement of an event A is the probability of A not occurring, denoted as P(not A) or P(A')

Inclusion/exclusion principle for probabilities

- Used to find the probability of the union of two or more events that are not mutually exclusive
- For two events A and B, the principle states: $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \text{ and } B)$
- $P(A \text{ and } B)$ represents the probability of both events A and B occurring simultaneously, also known as the intersection of the events
- To apply this principle: 1. Calculate the individual probabilities of each event 2. Calculate the probability of the intersection of the events 3. Add the individual probabilities and subtract the probability of the intersection
- Examples:
 - If the probability of drawing a heart from a standard deck of cards is $\frac{13}{52}$ and the probability of drawing a red card is $\frac{26}{52}$, the probability of drawing a heart or a red card is $\frac{13}{52} + \frac{26}{52} - \frac{13}{52} = \frac{26}{52} = \frac{1}{2}$
 - The probability of selecting a student who plays soccer or basketball from a group of 100 students, where 20 play soccer, 15 play basketball, and 5 play both sports is $\frac{20}{100} + \frac{15}{100} - \frac{5}{100} = \frac{30}{100} = 0.3$
 - Venn diagrams can be used to visualize the relationships between sets and their intersections in probability problems

Identification of mutually exclusive events

- Events are mutually exclusive if they cannot occur at the same time meaning the intersection of the events is empty
- To determine if events are mutually exclusive: 1. List the possible outcomes for each event 2. Compare the outcomes to see if there are any common elements
- If there are no common elements, the events are mutually exclusive
- If there are common elements, the events are not mutually exclusive
- Examples:
 - When rolling a fair die, the events "rolling an even number" and "rolling a number less than 3" are not mutually exclusive because they share the common outcome of rolling a 2

- When drawing a card from a standard deck, the events "drawing a heart" and "drawing a spade" are mutually exclusive because there are no cards that are both a heart and a spade
- Flipping a coin and getting heads or tails are mutually exclusive events since a coin cannot land on both heads and tails in a single flip

Set Theory and Probability

- Set theory provides a foundation for understanding probability concepts
- Independent events are events where the occurrence of one does not affect the probability of the other
- Conditional probability is the probability of an event occurring given that another event has already occurred

7.9 Conditional Probability and the Multiplication Rule

Conditional probability helps us calculate the likelihood of events happening when we already know something else has occurred. It's like figuring out the chances of rain when you see dark clouds. This concept is crucial in multistage experiments, where outcomes depend on previous events.

The multiplication rule for compound events lets us determine the probability of multiple things happening together. It's like calculating the odds of winning a game that requires multiple successful steps. This rule is especially useful when dealing with dependent events in real-world scenarios.

Conditional Probability and the Multiplication Rule

Conditional probabilities in multistage experiments

- Conditional probability calculates the likelihood of an event occurring given that another event has already happened
- Notation $P(A|B)$ represents "the probability of A given B"
- Formula $P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)}$ where $P(A \cap B)$ is the probability of both events A and B occurring together
- Multistage experiments consist of multiple steps or stages, each with its own set of possible outcomes
- Probability trees visually depict the possible outcomes and their probabilities in a multistage experiment
- Branches represent possible outcomes
- Probabilities are written along each branch
- The probability of a specific path is the product of the probabilities along that path (coin toss, dice roll)
- Probability tables organize and calculate probabilities in multistage experiments
- Rows and columns show possible outcomes at each stage
- The probability of each outcome combination is the product of the probabilities in the corresponding row and column (weather forecast, medical diagnosis)
- Venn diagrams can be used to visualize the relationships between events and their probabilities in multistage experiments

Multiplication rule for compound events

- The multiplication rule calculates the probability of two events A and B both occurring as the product of the probability of A occurring and the conditional probability of B occurring given that A has occurred
- Formula $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B|A)$
- For independent events, where the occurrence of one does not affect the probability of the other, the multiplication rule simplifies to $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$
- To determine the probability of compound events joined by "and": 1. Identify the individual events and their probabilities 2. Determine if the events are independent or dependent 3. For independent events, multiply the individual probabilities 4. For dependent events, calculate the conditional probability of the second event given the first, then multiply by the probability of the first event (drawing cards, rolling dice)
- The law of total probability can be used to calculate the probability of an event by considering all possible scenarios

Impact of new information on probabilities

- New information can alter the probability of an event occurring
- When additional information is provided, probabilities may need to be updated using conditional probability
- Example: The probability of a randomly selected student being a senior is 0.25. If it is known that the selected student is female, and 60% of seniors are female, the updated probability of the student being a senior given that she is female can be calculated using conditional probability (medical test results, weather forecasts)
- Bayes' theorem updates probabilities based on new information
- Formula $P(A|B) = \frac{P(B|A) \times P(A)}{P(B)}$
- $P(A)$ is the prior probability of event A occurring before considering the new information
- $P(B|A)$ is the likelihood of observing the new information (event B) given that event A has occurred
- $P(B)$ is the probability of observing the new information (event B) regardless of whether event A has occurred (disease diagnosis, machine failure)

Foundations of Probability Theory

- Set theory provides the mathematical framework for understanding probability events and their relationships
- Probability axioms form the fundamental rules that govern probability calculations: 1. The probability of any event is a non-negative real number between 0 and 1 2. The probability of the entire sample space is 1 3. For mutually exclusive events, the probability of their union is the sum of their individual probabilities

7.10 The Binomial Distribution

Binomial probability helps us calculate the chances of specific outcomes in experiments with fixed trials and two possible results. It's like predicting how many times you'll roll a six in ten dice throws.

The binomial formula is key, using factors like total trials, desired successes, and individual success probability. We can use this to figure out things like the likelihood of getting three heads when flipping a coin five times.

Binomial Probability

Binomial formula for probabilities

- Calculates the probability of a specific number of successes in a fixed number of independent trials
- Formula: $P(X = k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1 - p)^{n - k}$ (also known as the probability mass function for discrete probability distributions)
- n : total number of trials (fixed)
- k : number of successes desired
- p : probability of success on a single trial
- $1 - p$: probability of failure on a single trial
- To use the formula: 1. Confirm the experiment is binomial (fixed trials, two outcomes, constant probability, independence) 2. Identify n , k , and p based on the problem 3. Calculate the combination $\binom{n}{k}$ using $\frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$ 4. Plug values into the formula and simplify
- Examples:
 - Probability of getting exactly 3 heads in 5 coin flips (fair coin)
 - Probability of 2 defective items in a batch of 10 (10% defect rate)

Probability functions for binomial experiments

- Probability density function (PDF) gives the probability of each possible outcome
- Construct by calculating $P(X = k)$ for each k from 0 to n using the binomial formula
- All probabilities in a PDF sum to 1
- Example: PDF for number of heads in 3 coin flips (0, 1, 2, or 3 heads possible)
- Cumulative distribution function (CDF) gives the probability of k or fewer successes
- Construct by summing probabilities from the PDF for each k from 0 to the desired value
- CDF starts at 0 and ends at 1
- Example: CDF for 2 or fewer defective items in a batch of 10

Binomial Experiments

Criteria of binomial experiments

- Fixed number of trials (n)
- Only two possible outcomes per trial (success or failure)
- Constant probability of success (p) for all trials

- Trials are independent of each other (independence ensures that the outcome of one trial does not affect the others)
- Examples of binomial experiments:
 - Flipping a coin 20 times and counting heads (two outcomes, fixed trials, constant p , independence)
 - Testing 15 batteries and counting defects (pass/fail, fixed trials, constant defect rate, independence)
- Non-examples:
 - Drawing cards without replacement (probability changes each draw, violating constant p)
 - Survey with multiple choice answers (more than two outcomes per trial)

Properties of Binomial Distribution

- Mean (expected value): $\mu = np$
- Variance: $\sigma^2 = np(1 - p)$, which measures the spread of the distribution
- The binomial distribution is a discrete probability distribution, meaning it deals with countable, distinct outcomes

7.11 Expected Value

Gambling games like roulette use expected value to calculate average outcomes over many bets. The formula considers possible outcomes and their probabilities. In roulette, all bets have a negative expected value of -5.26%, meaning players lose money long-term.

Negative expected values favor the casino, creating a house edge. While short-term wins are possible, the law of large numbers means results converge to the expected value over time. Games with lower house edges or skill elements can offer better odds for players.

Expected Value in Gambling

Expected value in roulette bets

- Expected value formula calculates the average outcome of a bet over many trials:

$$E(X) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \cdot p_i$$

- x_i represents each possible outcome of the bet (win or loss amount)
- p_i represents the probability of each outcome occurring
- Single number bet (betting on a specific number like 17) has a payout of 35 to 1
- Probability of winning is $\frac{1}{38}$ since there is only one winning number out of 38 possible outcomes
- Probability of losing is $\frac{37}{38}$ as there are 37 non-winning outcomes
- Expected value for a single number bet: $E(X) = (35 \cdot \frac{1}{38}) + (-1 \cdot \frac{37}{38}) = -\frac{2}{38} \approx -0.0526$ or -5.26%
- Group bets cover multiple numbers and have different payouts and probabilities
- Red/Black, Even/Odd, or 1-18/19-36 bets have a payout of 1 to 1

- Probability of winning is $\frac{18}{38}$ as there are 18 winning outcomes out of 38 total
- Probability of losing is $\frac{20}{38}$ due to 20 non-winning outcomes (including 0 and 00)
- Expected value for these bets: $E(X) = (1 \cdot \frac{18}{38}) + (-1 \cdot \frac{20}{38}) = -\frac{2}{38} \approx -0.0526$ or -5.26%
- Dozens (1-12, 13-24, 25-36) or Columns bets have a payout of 2 to 1
- Probability of winning is $\frac{12}{38}$ with 12 winning numbers out of 38 total
- Probability of losing is $\frac{26}{38}$ given 26 non-winning outcomes
- Expected value for these bets: $E(X) = (2 \cdot \frac{12}{38}) + (-1 \cdot \frac{26}{38}) = -\frac{2}{38} \approx -0.0526$ or -5.26%

Interpretation of expected value results

- Expected value represents the average amount won or lost per bet in the long run
- Negative expected value means the player will lose money on average over many bets
- Positive expected value indicates the player will win money on average in the long term
- Casino games like roulette have negative expected values for players, favoring the house
- House edge is the casino's advantage, represented by the negative expected value
- Players are likely to lose money in the long run when playing games with negative expected values
- As more bets are placed, actual results will converge towards the expected value (law of large numbers)
- Standard deviation measures the variability of outcomes around the expected value

Comparison of gambling scenarios

- When comparing bets or games, the option with an expected value closest to zero or positive is most advantageous for players
- In roulette, all bets have the same -5.26% expected value, so no bet is better than others
- Games with lower house edges (expected values closer to zero) are better for players
- Blackjack with basic strategy has an expected value around -0.5% , more advantageous than roulette
- Skill-based games like poker can have positive expected values for skilled players
- The expected value depends on the player's skill relative to their opponents

Probability and Expected Value in Gambling

- Conditional probability affects expected value when outcomes are not independent
- Independent events in gambling do not influence each other's probabilities
- The central limit theorem explains why casino profits tend to be normally distributed over time

Unit 8 – Statistics

8.1 Gathering and Organizing Data

Sampling methods help researchers gather data from a subset of a population. Techniques like simple random sampling and stratified sampling help make the sample represent the whole group, which supports accurate studies and surveys.

Data types fall into two main categories: categorical and quantitative. Categorical data groups information into labels, while quantitative data deals with numerical values. Organizing data into frequency distributions makes it easier to analyze and interpret large datasets.

Sampling Methods and Data Types

Types of sampling methods

- Simple random sampling
 - Selects members from a population randomly, giving each member an equal chance of being chosen
 - Can be performed using a random number generator or by assigning numbers to population members and randomly selecting them (lottery)
- Systematic sampling
 - Selects members from a population at regular intervals from a list
 - Determines the interval by dividing the population size by the desired sample size
 - Randomly selects a starting point and then selects every nth member (every 10th person on a list)
- Stratified sampling
 - Divides a population into subgroups (strata) based on a specific characteristic (age groups)
 - Performs simple random sampling within each stratum to ensure representation of all subgroups in the sample
 - Useful when subgroups have different characteristics that need to be represented in the sample (income levels)
- Cluster sampling
 - Divides a population into naturally occurring groups (clusters) such as geographic regions (cities)
 - Selects a random sample of clusters and includes all members within the selected clusters in the sample
 - Useful when a complete list of population members is not available or when the population is geographically dispersed (households in a city)

Classification of data types

- Categorical data
 - Groups data into categories or labels that describe a characteristic or attribute

- Examples include gender (male, female), race (White, Black, Asian), and political affiliation (Democrat, Republican)
- Frequency distribution for categorical data lists each category and the number (frequency) of observations in that category
- Can also include relative frequency (proportion or percentage) for each category (25% Democrats)
- Quantitative data
- Measures or counts numerical values that represent quantities or amounts
- Examples include height (inches), weight (pounds), age (years), and test scores (points)
- Frequency distribution for quantitative data lists each unique value and the number (frequency) of observations with that value
- Can also include relative frequency (proportion or percentage) for each value (10% scored 85 points)

Organizing Quantitative Data

Construction of frequency distributions

- Binned frequency distribution
- Groups quantitative data into intervals (bins) of equal width to summarize the distribution of the data
- Useful when there are many unique values in the dataset (ages of a large group of people)
- Determining bin width
- Follows the rule of thumb that the number of bins should be between 5 and 20 for optimal readability and interpretation
- Calculates bin width using the formula: $\text{Bin Width} = \frac{\text{Maximum Value} - \text{Minimum Value}}{\text{Number of Bins}}$
- Example: If the maximum age is 80, the minimum age is 20, and we want 10 bins, the bin width would be $\frac{80 - 20}{10} = 6$ years
- Setting bin boundaries
- Sets the lower boundary of the first bin to be less than or equal to the minimum value in the dataset
- Sets the upper boundary of the last bin to be greater than or equal to the maximum value in the dataset
- Ensures bins do not overlap and cover the entire range of data (20-25, 26-31, 32-37)
- Chooses bin boundaries that are easily interpretable values (multiples of 5 or 10)
- Constructing the binned frequency distribution
- Determines the number of observations falling within each bin by counting or using software (12 people aged 20-25)
- Can also include relative frequency (proportion or percentage) for each bin (15% of people aged 26-31)

Data Collection and Analysis

- Population and Sample
- Population refers to the entire group being studied
- Sample is a subset of the population used to make inferences about the population
- Data Collection Methods
- Survey: A method of gathering information from a sample of individuals
- Census: A complete enumeration of an entire population
- Bias in Data Collection
- Occurs when the sample is not representative of the population, leading to skewed results
- Statistical Analysis
- The process of examining and interpreting collected data to draw meaningful conclusions and make informed decisions

8.2 Visualizing Data

Visualizing data helps turn numbers into patterns you can see. Bar charts, pie charts, and histograms make it easier to compare categories, spot trends, and describe how data is distributed.

Data visualizations can also mislead when scales are manipulated, areas are misrepresented, or data is cherry-picked. Data literacy means reading the graph and checking how the graph was built.

Representing Categorical Data

Bar and pie charts for categories

- Bar charts use rectangular bars to display categorical data
- Height of each bar represents frequency or proportion of category (favorite ice cream flavors)
- Bars can be oriented vertically or horizontally
- Useful for comparing frequencies or proportions across categories (market share of smartphone brands)
- Pie charts use circular chart divided into sectors for each category
- Size of sector is proportional to frequency or proportion of category (budget allocations)
- Calculate proportions by dividing frequency of each category by total frequency
- Multiply proportion by 360° to determine angle for each sector
- Interpreting bar and pie charts
- Compare bar heights or sector sizes to identify most and least frequent categories
- Look for notable differences or similarities in frequencies or proportions across categories (political party affiliations)

Displaying Quantitative Data

Stem-and-leaf plots and histograms

- Stem-and-leaf plots separate data values into "stem" (leading digits) and "leaf" (trailing digit)
- List stems vertically with leaves to the right, sorted in ascending order
- Provides compact, ordered representation of quantitative data (exam scores)
- Histograms divide data range into equal-sized intervals called bins
- Count number of data values in each bin
- Plot rectangular bars with heights corresponding to frequency or density of data in each bin
- Adjacent bars represent continuous data (heights of students)
- Revealing data distribution characteristics
- Shape can be symmetric, skewed left or right, bimodal, or uniform
- Center indicates approximate location of typical or central value (median income)
- Spread shows how much data values vary from the center (stock price volatility)
- Outliers are data points far from the majority of data (billionaires in wealth distribution)

Advanced Data Visualization Techniques

- Scatter plots display relationships between two variables
- Each point represents a pair of values (height vs. weight)
- Useful for identifying correlation between variables
- Time series charts show data changes over time
- Often include trend lines to highlight overall patterns
- Infographics combine multiple data visualizations and graphics
- Designed to present complex information quickly and clearly

Evaluating Data Visualizations

Critical analysis of data visualizations

- Watch for manipulated scales that can mislead
- Y-axis not starting at zero exaggerates differences (stock market fluctuations)
- Inconsistent scale intervals distort perception of change
- Truncated or compressed scales can obscure important variations (climate data)
- Be aware of misrepresented areas
- Pictograms or icon charts with disproportionate image sizes
- 3D charts creating false perception of volume instead of height or length (budget comparisons)

- Other potentially misleading elements
- Incomplete or missing axis labels and titles
- Cherry-picking data to selectively present and support a narrative (political polling)
- Using inappropriate chart types that fail to effectively communicate the data
- Critically evaluate data visualizations
- Check for presence of any misleading elements
- Consider the source and potential biases or agendas (industry-sponsored studies)
- Verify the data and methods used to create the visualization
- Develop data literacy skills to interpret and analyze visualizations accurately

8.3 Mean, Median and Mode

Central tendency measures help us understand the typical value in a dataset. The mode shows the most common value, the median represents the middle value, and the mean calculates the average. Each measure has its strengths and weaknesses.

These measures behave differently depending on the data's distribution. For symmetrical data, they're often similar. In skewed distributions, they can vary widely. Understanding when to use each measure is crucial for accurate data interpretation.

Measures of Central Tendency

Calculation of central tendency measures

- Mode represents the most frequently occurring value in a dataset
- Datasets can have no mode (no value appears more than once), one mode (unimodal), or multiple modes (bimodal or multimodal)
- In grouped data, the modal class is the class interval with the highest frequency (age groups, income brackets)
- Median is the middle value when the dataset is arranged in ascending or descending order
- For an odd number of values, the median is the middle value (5, 7, 9 - median is 7)
- For an even number of values, the median is the average of the two middle values (4, 6, 8, 10 - median is $(6 + 8) / 2 = 7$)
- The median is the 50th percentile, dividing the data into two equal parts
- Mean is the arithmetic average of all values in a dataset
- Calculated by summing all values and dividing by the number of values (10, 20, 30, 40 - mean is $(10 + 20 + 30 + 40) / 4 = 25$)
- Formula:

$$\bar{X} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n X_i}{n}$$

, where $\bar{X}$ is the mean, X_i are the individual values, and n is the number of values

Comparison of central tendency measures

- Mode is best used for categorical or qualitative data to identify the most common value or category (favorite color, most popular car brand)
- Median is best used for skewed distributions or datasets with outliers and ordinal data or data with a non-numerical order (median income, median house price)
- Mean is best used for symmetrical distributions and interval or ratio data, especially when comparing different datasets (average test scores, average height)
- Mode and median are less affected by extreme values or outliers, making them more robust measures of central tendency compared to the mean

Effects of data distribution

- Extreme values (outliers) have different effects on the mode, median, and mean
- Mode is not affected by outliers (1, 2, 3, 3, 4, 100 - mode is still 3)
- Median is less affected by outliers compared to the mean (1, 2, 3, 4, 100 - median is 3)
- Mean is highly sensitive to outliers and can be pulled towards the direction of the outlier (1, 2, 3, 4, 100 - mean is 22)
- In a perfectly symmetrical distribution, the mode, median, and mean are equal (bell curve)
- For approximately symmetrical distributions, the mean is usually the best measure of central tendency
- Skewed distributions have different relationships between the mode, median, and mean
- Right-skewed (positively skewed): $\text{Mode} < \text{Median} < \text{Mean}$ (income distribution)
- Left-skewed (negatively skewed): $\text{Mean} < \text{Median} < \text{Mode}$ (age distribution in a retirement community)
- For skewed distributions, the median is often the best measure of central tendency, as it is less affected by the skewness

Measures of Variability

- Range is the simplest measure of variability, calculated as the difference between the maximum and minimum values in a dataset
- Quartiles divide the dataset into four equal parts, with Q1 (25th percentile), Q2 (median), and Q3 (75th percentile)
- Standard deviation measures the average distance of data points from the mean, providing insight into the spread of the data
- Variance is the square of the standard deviation, representing the average squared deviation from the mean

8.4 Range and Standard Deviation

Ever wonder how spread out your data is? The range and standard deviation are two key tools for measuring this. They help you understand if your numbers are all bunched up or scattered far and wide.

The range is simple: just the difference between the biggest and smallest numbers. But standard deviation digs deeper, showing how far each number typically strays from the average. Together, they paint a clear picture of your data's spread.

Measuring Data Spread and Variability

Range calculation for data spread

- Calculates the spread of a dataset by finding the difference between the largest (maximum) and smallest (minimum) values
- Provides a quick and easy way to gauge how widely dispersed the data points are
- Larger range signifies the data is more spread out (temperatures in °C: 10, 15, 20, 30, 35; range = 35 - 10 = 25)
- Smaller range indicates the data is more tightly clustered together (exam scores: 85, 87, 88, 90, 92; range = 92 - 85 = 7)
- Heavily influenced by extreme values or outliers that can greatly increase the range (salaries in thousands: 30, 35, 40, 45, 200; range = 200 - 30 = 170)
- Fails to consider how the values are distributed between the minimum and maximum (two datasets with the same range can have different distributions)

Standard deviation computation process

- Measures the average amount each data point deviates (differs) from the mean (average) of the dataset
- Offers a more detailed and informative measure of data spread compared to the range
- Calculation steps:
 1. Find the mean by adding up all the values and dividing by the number of data points
 2. Subtract the mean from each data point to determine how much it deviates from the mean
 3. Square each deviation to make them all positive and give more weight to larger deviations
 4. Add up all the squared deviations
 5. Divide the sum by the total number of data points (for a population) or one less than the total (for a sample) to calculate the variance
 6. Take the square root of the variance to obtain the standard deviation
- Population standard deviation formula: $\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\sum (x - \mu)^2}{N}}$ where σ is the population standard deviation, x is each data point, μ is the population mean, and N is the population size
- Sample standard deviation formula: $s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum (x - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}}$ where s is the sample standard deviation, $\bar{x}$ is the sample mean, and n is the sample size

Interpretation of spread measures

- Range represents the full extent of the data spread from the smallest to the largest value

- Helps identify the minimum and maximum values in a dataset (stock prices: \$10 - \$50; range = \$40)
- Lacks information about how the values are distributed within the range (two datasets with the same range can have different shapes)
- Standard deviation quantifies the typical or average distance between each data point and the mean
- Lower standard deviation suggests the data points are closely clustered near the mean (heights in cm: 160, 162, 165, 168, 170; standard deviation ≈ 3.8)
- Higher standard deviation implies the data points are more spread out from the mean (weights in kg: 50, 60, 70, 80, 90; standard deviation ≈ 15.8)
- Datasets with identical means can exhibit different ranges and standard deviations (two classes with the same average score but different variability)
- Dataset with a lower standard deviation is considered less variable than one with a higher standard deviation, regardless of their ranges
- Real-world applications include assessing the consistency of a manufacturing process (product dimensions), evaluating the reliability of measurements (lab results), and comparing the precision of different estimation methods (polling data)
- Standard deviation is a key measure of dispersion in descriptive statistics

Additional Statistical Concepts

- Measures of central tendency (such as mean, median, and mode) complement measures of spread to provide a comprehensive view of data distribution
- Z-score represents the number of standard deviations a data point is from the mean, allowing for comparison across different datasets
- The empirical rule states that for normally distributed data, approximately 68%, 95%, and 99.7% of the data fall within one, two, and three standard deviations of the mean, respectively

8.5 Percentiles

Percentiles are a powerful tool for understanding data distribution and comparing values within datasets. They represent the percentage of data points falling below a specific value, allowing us to contextualize individual data points and make meaningful comparisons across different populations.

Calculating percentiles involves arranging data in ascending order and using formulas to determine ranks. Interpreting percentile rankings helps identify outliers and compare data points within and across populations. Percentiles are widely used in college admissions, sports analytics, and income distribution analysis.

Understanding Percentiles

Calculation of percentiles

- Percentiles represent the percentage of data points falling below a specific value in a dataset
- 60th percentile is the value below which 60% of the data points are found (test scores, income levels)
- Manually calculate percentiles by:

- Arranging the dataset in ascending order
- Calculating the rank of the desired percentile using the formula: $rank = \frac{p(n+1)}{100}$, where p is the percentile and n is the total number of data points
- If the rank is a whole number, average the values at that rank and the next rank to find the percentile
- If the rank is not a whole number, round up to the nearest whole number and use the value at that rank as the percentile
- Calculate percentiles using spreadsheet functions:
- In Microsoft Excel, use the PERCENTILE.INC function: `=PERCENTILE.INC(array, k)`
- *array* is the dataset
- *k* is the percentile as a decimal (0.6 for 60th percentile)
- In Google Sheets, use the PERCENTILE function: `=PERCENTILE(range, k)`
- *range* is the dataset
- *k* is the percentile as a decimal

Interpretation of percentile rankings

- Percentiles provide context for individual data points within a dataset
- Data point at the 75th percentile is higher than 75% of the other data points in the same dataset (test scores, salaries)
- Compare data points within the same population using percentiles
- Allows for direct comparison regardless of specific values
- Student scoring at the 90th percentile on a test performed better than 90% of their classmates
- Compare data points across different populations using percentiles
- Enables comparison even if datasets have different scales or distributions
- Compare a child's height to their age group's percentiles and then to the adult population's percentiles
- Percentiles help identify outliers in a dataset, which are extreme values that fall far from the typical range

Application of percentiles to data

- College admissions statistics
- Colleges report 25th, 50th, and 75th percentile scores for admitted students' SAT or ACT exams
- Prospective students compare their scores to these percentiles to gauge admission chances
- Student's SAT score falling between the 25th and 50th percentiles indicates they are in the middle 50% of admitted students
- Sports team performance
- Compare individual player statistics within a team or across different teams using percentiles

- Basketball player's points per game compared to percentiles of their team or the entire league
- Player consistently performing above the 90th percentile in various statistical categories considered a top performer (rebounds, assists)
- Analyzing income distribution
- Percentiles describe income inequality within a population
- 50th percentile (median income) represents the middle of the income distribution
- Comparing 90th or 95th percentile income to median income reveals extent of income inequality (wealth gap, poverty rates)

Data Distribution and Statistical Measures

- Cumulative frequency is used to calculate percentiles by determining the number of data points below a certain value
- The data distribution affects how percentiles are interpreted and can reveal patterns such as skewness in the dataset
- Standard deviation is often used alongside percentiles to provide a more complete picture of data spread and variability

8.6 The Normal Distribution

The normal distribution is a key concept in statistics, showing how data spreads around a central point. It's known for its bell-shaped curve and the 68-95-99.7 rule, which tells us where most data falls.

Z-scores help compare data points across different datasets by showing how far they are from the mean. Tools like Google Sheets make it easy to work with normal distributions, calculating percentiles and data values quickly.

The Normal Distribution

68-95-99.7 rule for percentiles

- Describes the distribution of data in a normal distribution
- 68% of data falls within one standard deviation $\pm 1\sigma$ of mean μ (majority of data)
- 95% of data falls within two standard deviations $\pm 2\sigma$ of mean μ (nearly all data)
- 99.7% of data falls within three standard deviations $\pm 3\sigma$ of mean μ (almost entire dataset)
- Calculate percentiles using the 68-95-99.7 rule by determining mean μ and standard deviation σ of dataset
- Find desired percentile range using the rule (68th percentile $\mu \pm 1\sigma$)
- Calculate data values using the 68-95-99.7 rule by determining mean μ and standard deviation σ of dataset
- Find data values corresponding to desired percentile range using the rule (95th percentile $\mu \pm 2\sigma$)
- The area under the curve of a normal distribution represents the probability of observing a value within a specific range

Standardized scores in normal distributions

- Z-score (standardized score) represents number of standard deviations a data point is from mean
- Calculate z-score using formula $z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$
- x individual data point
- μ mean of dataset
- σ standard deviation of dataset
- Interpret z-scores
- Positive z-score indicates data point above mean (right side of distribution)
- Negative z-score indicates data point below mean (left side of distribution)
- Z-score of 0 indicates data point equal to mean (center of distribution)
- Magnitude of z-score represents distance from mean in standard deviations (z-score 1.5 means 1.5 standard deviations above mean)

Technology for normal distribution calculations

- Google Sheets provides functions for normal distributions
- Find percentiles for normal distribution using NORM.DIST function
- Syntax: =NORM.DIST(x, mean, standard_deviation, cumulative)
- x data value
- mean mean of distribution
- standard_deviation standard deviation of distribution
- cumulative boolean value (TRUE or FALSE) indicating use of cumulative distribution function CDF
- Set cumulative to TRUE to find percentile for given data value
- Find data values for given percentile using NORM.INV function
- Syntax: =NORM.INV(probability, mean, standard_deviation)
- probability desired percentile as decimal between 0 and 1
- mean mean of distribution
- standard_deviation standard deviation of distribution
- Function returns data value corresponding to given percentile

Characteristics of Normal Distributions

- Normal distributions are a type of continuous probability distribution
- The shape of a normal distribution can be described using measures such as:
- Skewness: indicates the symmetry of the distribution

- Kurtosis: measures the thickness of the tails relative to the center of the distribution
- The central limit theorem states that the sampling distribution of the mean approaches a normal distribution as the sample size increases, regardless of the underlying population distribution

8.7 Applications of the Normal Distribution

Normal distributions and z-scores are powerful tools for comparing data across different scales. They help us understand how values relate to the average and spread of a dataset, making it easier to interpret test scores and other measurements.

Z-scores tell us how far a value is from the mean in terms of standard deviations. This allows us to compare scores from different tests or datasets, calculate percentiles, and make sense of data in various real-world situations, from standardized tests to coin flips.

Normal Distribution and Z-Scores

Standardized test score comparisons

- Z-scores enable comparison of values from different normal distributions by expressing them in terms of standard deviations from the mean
- Calculate z-scores using the formula $Z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$
- x represents the raw score being converted
- μ represents the mean of the distribution
- σ represents the standard deviation of the distribution
- Z-score indicates how many standard deviations a value lies above or below the mean
- Positive z-scores signify values above the mean (SAT score of 1200)
- Negative z-scores signify values below the mean (ACT score of 18)
- Percentiles express the percentage of scores that fall below a particular value
- Determine percentiles using a z-score table or calculator (68th percentile)
- A z-score of 0 corresponds to the 50th percentile, the median of the distribution
- Percentiles facilitate comparison of relative performance across different tests (GRE, GMAT)

Normal distribution in coin flips

- Coin flips adhere to a binomial distribution, which can be approximated by a normal distribution when the number of trials is large
- The mean of the distribution is calculated as np
- n represents the number of trials (100 coin flips)
- p represents the probability of success (heads) on a single trial (0.5 for a fair coin)
- The standard deviation is calculated as $\sqrt{np(1 - p)}$
- To calculate the probability of a specific number of successes (55 heads in 100 flips): 1. Calculate the z-score for the desired number of successes 2. Use the z-score table or calculator to find the area

under the curve 3. For a range of successes (between 45 and 55 heads), find the area between the corresponding z-scores

Real-world normal distribution applications

- Assess if the dataset follows a normal distribution
- Visually evaluate normality using a histogram or QQ plot (bell-shaped curve)
- Employ statistical tests such as the Shapiro-Wilk test or Kolmogorov-Smirnov test to confirm normality
- If the dataset is approximately normal (heights of adult males): 1. Calculate the mean and standard deviation of the dataset 2. Use z-scores to find the percentile for a specific value
- Interpret the percentile in the context of the dataset (a male's height compared to the population) 3. Use percentiles to find the value corresponding to a specific percentile
- Interpret the value in the context of the dataset (the minimum height required to be in the top 5% of adult males)
- If the dataset is not normal, consider transforming the data (log transformation) or using non-parametric methods (median, interquartile range)

Statistical Inference and the Normal Distribution

- The central limit theorem states that the sampling distribution of the sample mean approaches a normal distribution as the sample size increases
- Probability calculations using the normal distribution form the basis for statistical inference
- Confidence intervals use the normal distribution to estimate population parameters
- Hypothesis testing relies on the normal distribution to make decisions about population characteristics
- The sampling distribution of a statistic (such as the sample mean) is crucial for making inferences about populations

8.8 Scatter Plots, Correlation, and Regression Lines

Scatter plots help us visualize relationships between two variables. By plotting points on a graph, we can see patterns and trends in data. This visual representation is crucial for understanding how different factors might be connected.

Correlation coefficients and regression lines take scatter plots a step further. These tools let us quantify relationships and make predictions based on data. Understanding these concepts helps us interpret real-world information and make informed decisions.

Scatter Plots and Correlation

Creation of scatter plots

- Visualize relationships between two quantitative variables by plotting data points on a coordinate plane
- Each point represents a single observation (student's height and weight)
- Independent variable plotted on x-axis (hours studied)

- Dependent variable plotted on y-axis (exam score)
- Construct scatter plots by hand or using technology (Excel, graphing calculator)
- Choose appropriate scales for x and y axes to accurately represent data
- Label axes clearly with variable names and units (time in minutes, distance in kilometers)

Interpretation of correlation coefficients

- Correlation coefficient (r) quantifies strength and direction of linear relationships between variables
- r ranges from -1 to 1
- $r = 1$: perfect positive linear relationship (income and education level)
- $r = -1$: perfect negative linear relationship (car's value and age)
- $r = 0$: no linear relationship (shoe size and IQ)
- Stronger linear relationships indicated by $|r|$ values closer to 1 (0.9 vs 0.2)
- Positive r : variables increase together (hours of exercise and cardiovascular health)
- Negative r : one variable increases as the other decreases (product price and demand)
- Coefficient of determination (r^2) is proportion of variation in dependent variable explained by independent variable
- r^2 ranges from 0 to 1
- $r^2 = 0.81$: 81% of variation in test scores explained by study time
- Correlation does not imply causation; other factors may influence the relationship

Regression Lines

Regression lines for predictions

- Regression line (least-squares line) best fits data points in scatter plot
- Minimizes sum of squared vertical distances between points and line
- Equation of regression line: $\hat{y} = mx + b$
- $\hat{y}$: predicted value of dependent variable
- m : slope, change in $\hat{y}$ per one-unit increase in x
- b : y-intercept, $\hat{y}$ value when $x = 0$
- Make predictions by substituting x value into equation and solving for $\hat{y}$
- Predict test score ($\hat{y}$) for 5 hours of studying (x): $\hat{y} = 10 + 5(5) = 35$
- Interpret slope in context of problem
- Slope of 1.5 with dependent variable of sales (thousands) and independent variable of advertising expenditure (thousands): each \$1,000 increase in advertising associated with \$1,500 increase in sales

Analyzing Regression Models

- Interpolation: Making predictions within the range of observed data
- Extrapolation: Making predictions outside the range of observed data (less reliable)
- Residual: Difference between observed and predicted values, used to assess model fit
- Variance: Measure of spread in data points, affects reliability of regression model

Unit 9 – Metric System Basics

9.1 The Metric System

The metric system simplifies measurements using base units and prefixes. It's all about powers of 10, making conversions a breeze. Whether you're measuring length, volume, or mass, the system's consistency helps you tackle real-world problems.

Understanding metric prefixes is key to mastering this system. From kilo (1000 times larger) to milli (1000 times smaller), these prefixes let you express measurements in a range that makes sense. It's a practical skill for everyday life and scientific work.

Metric System Fundamentals

Metric unit conversions

- Length
 - Base unit (base unit) measures distance (m)
 - Conversion factors change the unit by powers of 10
 - (km) 1000 times larger than (m)
 - (hm) 100 times larger than (m)
 - (dam) 10 times larger than (m)
 - (dm) 10 times smaller than (m)
 - (cm) 100 times smaller than (m)
 - (mm) 1000 times smaller than (m)
 - Multiply or divide by the power of 10 to convert (2 km = 2000 m)
- Volume
 - Base unit measures capacity (L)
 - Conversion factors change the unit by powers of 10
 - (kL) 1000 times larger than (L)
 - (hL) 100 times larger than (L)
 - (daL) 10 times larger than (L)
 - (dL) 10 times smaller than (L)
 - (cL) 100 times smaller than (L)
 - (mL) 1000 times smaller than (L)
 - 1 liter equals the volume of a cube with 1 dm sides ($1 \text{ L} = 1 \text{ dm}^3$)
- Mass
 - Base unit measures amount of matter (g)

- Conversion factors change the unit by powers of 10
- (t) 1,000,000 times larger than (g)
- (kg) 1000 times larger than (g)
- (hg) 100 times larger than (g)
- (dag) 10 times larger than (g)
- (dg) 10 times smaller than (g)
- (cg) 100 times smaller than (g)
- (mg) 1000 times smaller than (g)

Area and volume calculations

- Area
- Measures surface of a shape in square meters (m^2)
- Formula multiplies length and width ($\text{Area} = \text{length} \times \text{width}$)
- A rectangle 5 m long and 3 m wide has an area of 15 m^2 ($5 \text{ m} \times 3 \text{ m} = 15 \text{ m}^2$)
- Volume
- Measures space inside a solid in cubic meters (m^3)
- Formula multiplies length, width, and height ($\text{Volume} = \text{length} \times \text{width} \times \text{height}$)
- A rectangular solid 2 m long, 1.5 m wide, and 0.5 m high has a volume of 1.5 m^3 ($2 \text{ m} \times 1.5 \text{ m} \times 0.5 \text{ m} = 1.5 \text{ m}^3$)

Applying Metric Prefixes

Metric prefix applications

- Metric prefixes
- Kilo (k) means 1000 times the base unit (10^3)
- Hecto (h) means 100 times the base unit (10^2)
- Deca (da) means 10 times the base unit (10^1)
- Base unit has no prefix (10^0)
- Deci (d) means 0.1 times the base unit (10^{-1})
- Centi (c) means 0.01 times the base unit (10^{-2})
- Milli (m) means 0.001 times the base unit (10^{-3})
- Each prefix (prefix) represents a specific power of 10 for easy conversion
- Expressing measurements
- Choose a prefix to keep the number between 1 and 1000

- 5000 m can be written as 5 km ($5 \times 1000 \text{ m}$)
- 0.03 g can be written as 30 mg ($30 \times 0.001 \text{ g}$)
- 0.25 L can be written as 250 mL ($250 \times 0.001 \text{ L}$)
- 1,500,000 g can be written as 1.5 t ($1.5 \times 1,000,000 \text{ g}$)

History and Standardization

- The metric system, now known as the International System of Units (International System of Units), was developed to standardize measurements globally
- Gabriel Mouton (Gabriel Mouton), a French mathematician, proposed the initial concept of a decimal-based measurement system in the 17th century
- The system uses base units (base unit) for fundamental quantities like length, mass, and time
- Prefixes are used to create larger or smaller units through powers of 10, facilitating easy conversion (conversion) between units
- This standardization allows for consistent and accurate measurements (measurement) across scientific, industrial, and everyday applications worldwide

9.2 Measuring Area

Measuring area is a key skill in geometry and everyday life. We'll learn how to calculate the size of rectangular surfaces using length and width, and explore the metric units used to express area.

Converting between metric area units is crucial for practical applications. We'll practice using conversion factors to switch between square meters, centimeters, and millimeters, and tackle real-world problems involving area calculations.

Measuring Area

Area of rectangular surfaces

- Calculate area by multiplying length and width ($A = l \times w$)
- Metric units for length and width (meters, centimeters, millimeters)
- Meter (m) is the base unit of length in the metric system
- Centimeter (cm) is 1/100th of a meter
- Millimeter (mm) is 1/1000th of a meter
- Express area in square units (square meters m^2 , square centimeters cm^2 , square millimeters mm^2)
- Example: Rectangle with length 5 m and width 3 m has area $5 \text{ m} \times 3 \text{ m} = 15 \text{ m}^2$
- Example: Rectangle with length 120 cm and width 80 cm has area $120 \text{ cm} \times 80 \text{ cm} = 9,600 \text{ cm}^2$
- Area is a fundamental concept in geometry, used to measure the size of plane figures

Conversion of metric area units

- Use conversion factors to change between metric area units

- $1 \text{ m}^2 = 10,000 \text{ cm}^2$ (move decimal point 4 places to the right)
- $1 \text{ cm}^2 = 100 \text{ mm}^2$ (move decimal point 2 places to the right)
- Larger unit to smaller unit: multiply by conversion factor
- Example: $15 \text{ m}^2 \times \frac{10,000 \text{ cm}^2}{1 \text{ m}^2} = 150,000 \text{ cm}^2$
- Smaller unit to larger unit: divide by conversion factor
- Example: $9,600 \text{ cm}^2 \div \frac{10,000 \text{ cm}^2}{1 \text{ m}^2} = 0.96 \text{ m}^2$
- Perform unit analysis to ensure conversion results in desired unit
- Conversion factors are fractions equal to 1, allowing for unit cancellation
- Example: $\frac{15 \text{ m}^2}{1} \times \frac{10,000 \text{ cm}^2}{1 \text{ m}^2} = 150,000 \text{ cm}^2$

Problem-solving with area calculations

1. Identify shape and dimensions of surface - Determine if surface is rectangular or can be divided into rectangles - Measure or estimate length and width of each rectangular section (room dimensions, rug size)
2. Calculate area of each rectangle and sum for total area - Use formula $A = l \times w$ for each rectangle - Add areas of all rectangles to find total area - Example: Room with main section $5 \text{ m} \times 4 \text{ m}$ and closet $2 \text{ m} \times 1 \text{ m}$ has total area $5 \text{ m} \times 4 \text{ m} + 2 \text{ m} \times 1 \text{ m} = 22 \text{ m}^2$
3. Subtract areas of excluded portions from total - Identify areas not part of surface or that need to be removed (fireplace, built-in shelves) - Calculate area of excluded portions and subtract from total - Example: 22 m^2 room with 1.5 m^2 fireplace has actual flooring area $22 \text{ m}^2 - 1.5 \text{ m}^2 = 20.5 \text{ m}^2$
4. Check reasonableness of calculated area - Consider problem context and expected surface size - Compare calculated area to estimation or real-world references (typical room sizes) - Example: Calculation of 205 m^2 for a bedroom is likely an error, as this is much larger than a typical bedroom

Related Concepts

- Perimeter: The distance around the edge of a plane figure
- Surface area: The total area of all surfaces of a three-dimensional object
- Plane figures: Two-dimensional shapes with length and width, but no depth

9.3 Measuring Volume

Volume measurement is all about figuring out how much space 3D objects take up. We use it for everything from cooking to construction. Understanding volume helps us make sense of the world around us and solve practical problems.

Converting between different units of volume is key for many real-world applications. Whether you're filling a fish tank or mixing ingredients, knowing how to switch between cubic centimeters, liters, and other units is super useful.

Volume Measurement and Conversions

Calculation of three-dimensional volumes

- Volume quantifies the space occupied by a three-dimensional object measured in cubic units (m^3 , cm^3 , L)
- Calculate the volume of a rectangular prism by multiplying its length, width, and height using the formula $V = l \times w \times h$
- Determine the volume of a cylinder by multiplying the area of its circular base (πr^2) by its height (h) with the formula $V = \pi r^2 h$
- Compute the volume of a sphere using the formula $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$, where r represents the sphere's radius
- Convert between metric units of volume using factors such as $1 m^3 = 1,000,000 cm^3$ and $1 L = 1,000 mL = 1,000 cm^3$
- For irregular shapes, use displacement methods to measure volume

Reasonable volume measurements in context

- Select appropriate units based on the object's size, using cm^3 or mL for small items and m^3 or L for larger ones
- Estimate volumes of everyday objects to assess the reasonableness of calculated values
- A typical coffee mug holds approximately 300-400 mL
- A standard shipping container has a volume of around 40 m^3
- A 2-liter bottle contains 2,000 mL or 2,000 cm^3
- Evaluate the problem's context to determine if the calculated volume makes sense in the given situation (swimming pool vs. drinking glass)

Volume conversions for applications

- Identify the provided information and the desired unit of measurement in the problem
- Apply the appropriate conversion factor to convert between cubic units and liters/milliliters
- $1 cm^3 = 1 mL$
- $1,000 cm^3 = 1 L$
- Solve application problems involving volume conversions, such as: 1. Calculate the volume of a rectangular fish tank in cubic centimeters using its length, width, and height 2. Convert the calculated volume from cubic centimeters to liters to determine the tank's water capacity
- Example: A fish tank measuring 50 cm long, 30 cm wide, and 40 cm high can hold 60 L of water ($50 \times 30 \times 40 = 60,000 cm^3 = 60 L$)

Advanced Volume Concepts

- Density is the mass per unit volume, often used to determine the volume of an object given its mass

- Fluid dynamics studies the behavior of liquids and gases in motion, which can affect volume measurements
- Integration techniques can be used to calculate volumes of complex shapes in calculus-based approaches

9.4 Measuring Weight

The metric system makes weight and mass measurements easier to compare because its units scale by powers of ten. Mass stays constant, while weight changes with gravity, so the two measurements answer different questions. That distinction helps you choose the right unit and conversion.

Metric prefixes like kilo- and milli- make unit conversions straightforward. Practicing these conversions and estimating weights of common objects builds practical skills for everyday measurement and problem solving.

Measuring Weight in the Metric System

Mass vs weight in metric system

- Mass quantifies amount of matter in an object remains constant regardless of location or gravity (moon, Earth)
- Weight measures force of gravity acting on an object varies based on strength of gravitational field (weaker on moon than Earth)
- Base unit of mass in metric system is gram (g) while base unit of weight is newton (N)
- Relationship between mass and weight expressed as
Weight = Mass × Acceleration due to gravity
- Object with mass of 1 kilogram (kg) weighs about 9.8 newtons (N) on Earth but only 1.6 N on moon due to weaker gravity
- Weight is a force that can be measured using a scale or balance

Conversions between metric weight units

- Metric prefixes and values
- Kilo- (k) represents 1,000 or 10^3 (kilometer, kilogram)
- Gram (g) represents 1 or 10^0 (base unit)
- Milli- (m) represents 0.001 or 10^{-3} (millimeter, milligram)
- Converting larger to smaller units multiply by conversion factor
- $1 \text{ kg} = 1 \text{ kg} \times (1,000 \text{ g} / 1 \text{ kg}) = 1,000 \text{ g}$ (kilograms to grams)
- $5 \text{ kg} = 5 \text{ kg} \times (1,000 \text{ g} / 1 \text{ kg}) = 5,000 \text{ g}$
- Converting smaller to larger units divide by conversion factor
- $500 \text{ mg} = 500 \text{ mg} \div (1,000 \text{ mg} / 1 \text{ g}) = 0.5 \text{ g}$ (milligrams to grams)
- $7,500 \text{ mg} = 7,500 \text{ mg} \div (1,000 \text{ mg} / 1 \text{ g}) = 7.5 \text{ g}$
- Key conversion factors

- 1 kg = 1,000 g (moving decimal 3 places right)
- 1 g = 1,000 mg (moving decimal 3 places left)

Estimating and calculating metric weights

- Estimating weights of common objects in metric units
- Nickel (US coin) has mass around 5 grams (g)
- Paperclip has mass around 1 gram (g)
- Textbook has mass around 1-2 kilograms (kg)
- Car has mass around 1,000-2,000 kilograms or 1-2 metric tons (t)
- Steps for solving weight calculation problems 1. Identify given information (values) and unknown quantity 2. Determine appropriate formula or conversion factor 3. Substitute known values into formula 4. Solve equation for unknown quantity
- Sample problem
- Box contains 25 items each with mass of 150 grams
- Find total mass of items in box
- Formula *Total mass = Number of items × Mass per item*
- Calculation *Total mass = 25 × 150 g = 3,750 g = 3.75 kg*

Additional Considerations in Weight Measurement

- Density affects an object's weight relative to its volume
- Buoyancy can influence weight measurements in fluids
- Calibration of measuring instruments ensures accurate weight readings

9.5 Measuring Temperature

Temperature is all about molecular motion. As things heat up, molecules move faster and spread out. When they cool down, molecules slow down and get closer together. This affects how substances behave and is key to understanding many everyday phenomena.

Measuring temperature involves different scales like Fahrenheit and Celsius. Converting between them is useful for cooking, weather forecasts, and science. Understanding temperature helps us make sense of the world around us, from why bridges expand to how our bodies regulate heat.

Temperature and Molecular Motion

Temperature and molecular motion

- Measures the average kinetic energy of molecules in a substance
- Energy of motion possessed by molecules
- Increases cause molecules to move faster and collide more frequently
- Leads to expansion as molecules spread out due to increased motion (gases, liquids)

- Decreases cause molecules to move slower and collide less frequently
- Leads to contraction as molecules move closer together due to decreased motion (solids)
- Measured using a thermometer

Fahrenheit vs Celsius conversions

- Two common temperature scales used to measure temperature
- Fahrenheit to Celsius conversion: $^{\circ}\text{C} = (^{\circ}\text{F} - 32) \times \frac{5}{9}$ 1. Subtract 32 from the Fahrenheit temperature 2. Multiply the result by $\frac{5}{9}$
- Celsius to Fahrenheit conversion: $^{\circ}\text{F} = (^{\circ}\text{C} \times \frac{9}{5}) + 32$ 1. Multiply the Celsius temperature by $\frac{9}{5}$ 2. Add 32 to the result
- Mental math approximations for quick estimates
- Celsius from Fahrenheit: subtract 30 from $^{\circ}\text{F}$ and divide by 2 ($86^{\circ}\text{F} \approx 28^{\circ}\text{C}$)
- Fahrenheit from Celsius: double $^{\circ}\text{C}$ and add 30 ($25^{\circ}\text{C} \approx 80^{\circ}\text{F}$)

Temperature Scales and Concepts

- Kelvin: An absolute temperature scale with 0 K representing absolute zero
- Absolute zero: The lowest possible temperature where molecular motion theoretically stops
- Thermal expansion: The tendency of matter to change in volume in response to temperature changes
- Heat transfer: The movement of thermal energy from one object or system to another

Temperature in real-world applications

- Cooking and baking require temperature conversions
- Recipe calls for 180°C , convert to Fahrenheit: $^{\circ}\text{F} = (180 \times \frac{9}{5}) + 32 = 356^{\circ}\text{F}$
- Weather forecasts and climate data use different scales
- London temperature 20°C , convert to Fahrenheit: $^{\circ}\text{F} = (20 \times \frac{9}{5}) + 32 = 68^{\circ}\text{F}$
- Temperature changes affect properties and behavior of substances
- Water freezes at 0°C (32°F) and boils at 100°C (212°F) at standard atmospheric pressure
- Bridges and railways expand and contract due to temperature changes
- Expansion joints and gaps prevent damage (Golden Gate Bridge, San Francisco)

Unit 10 – Geometry

10.1 Points, Lines, and Planes

Geometry is all about shapes and spaces. From simple points to complex planes, it's the language we use to describe the world around us. Understanding these basics helps us make sense of everything from building designs to computer graphics.

Set theory and coordinate systems take geometry to the next level. They give us tools to analyze relationships between shapes and plot them precisely. This foundation is crucial for tackling more advanced geometric concepts and real-world applications.

Geometric Figures and Components

Components of geometric figures

- Points represent a specific location in space denoted by a single uppercase letter (A, P) have no length, width, or depth
- Lines extend infinitely in both directions determined by two distinct points denoted by a lowercase letter or two uppercase points ($\overleftrightarrow{AB}$, ℓ)
- Line segments consist of two endpoints and all the points between them have a finite length denoted by two uppercase letters with a line segment symbol above them ($\overline{CD}$)
- Rays consist of an endpoint and extend infinitely in one direction denoted by an endpoint and another point on the ray with a ray symbol above them ($\overrightarrow{EF}$)
- Planes are two-dimensional flat surfaces that extend infinitely in all directions determined by three non-collinear points or a line and a point not on the line denoted by a single uppercase script letter ($\mathcal{P}$)
- Planes are fundamental in geometry, which is the study of shapes, sizes, and positions of figures in space

Set Theory and Geometric Objects

Set theory in geometry

- Union of two or more geometric objects consists of all the points that belong to at least one of the objects denoted by the symbol $\cup$ ($\ell_1 \cup \ell_2$)
- Intersection of two or more geometric objects consists of all the points that are common to all the objects denoted by the symbol $\cap$ ($\ell_1 \cap \ell_2$)
- Two lines can intersect at no point (parallel lines), one point, or infinitely many points (coincident lines)

Lines in the Cartesian Coordinate System

Parallel vs perpendicular lines

- Parallel lines are two lines in the same plane that do not intersect have the same slope vertical lines are parallel to each other and have undefined slope

- Perpendicular lines are two lines that intersect at a 90-degree angle slopes are negative reciprocals of each other horizontal and vertical lines are perpendicular to each other
- Cartesian coordinate system is a two-dimensional plane with a horizontal x-axis and a vertical y-axis origin is the point (0, 0) where the axes intersect used to graph and analyze geometric objects and their relationships
- The Cartesian coordinate system is an example of a two-dimensional Euclidean space

Foundations of Geometry

- Geometry is built on a set of fundamental truths called axioms
- Axioms are statements accepted without proof and serve as the basis for deriving other geometric truths
- The concept of dimension is crucial in geometry, describing the number of coordinates needed to specify a point in a given space

10.2 Angles

Angles are all around us, from the corners of rooms to the hands of clocks. They come in different types and sizes, each with unique properties. Understanding angles helps us make sense of shapes and structures in our everyday world.

Parallel lines and transversals create special angle relationships. These connections between angles are like secret codes that unlock geometric puzzles. Knowing these patterns helps us solve problems in math and real life, from construction to navigation.

Types and Measures of Angles

Types of angles

- Angles classified based on measure in degrees
- Acute angle has measure greater than 0° and less than 90° (45° , 60°)
- Right angle has measure of exactly 90°
- Denoted by small square at vertex (corner of a square, book)
- Obtuse angle has measure greater than 90° and less than 180° (120° , 150°)
- Straight angle has measure of exactly 180°
- Forms straight line (horizon, table edge)

Calculation of angle measures

- Supplementary angles have measures that add up to 180°
- If angles a and b are supplementary, then $a + b = 180^\circ$ (30° and 150° , 45° and 135°)
- Complementary angles have measures that add up to 90°
- If angles a and b are complementary, then $a + b = 90^\circ$ (30° and 60° , 25° and 65°)
- Vertical angles formed by intersecting lines, directly opposite each other

- Vertical angles have equal measures (crossing streets, an "X")
- Angle measures can be determined using a protractor

Angles Formed by Parallel Lines and a Transversal

Angles with parallel lines

- Transversal intersects two parallel lines, forming several angle relationships
- Alternate interior angles on opposite sides of transversal, inside parallel lines
- Alternate interior angles have equal measures (Z pattern)
- Alternate exterior angles on opposite sides of transversal, outside parallel lines
- Alternate exterior angles have equal measures (Z pattern)
- Corresponding angles on same side of transversal, one inside and one outside parallel lines
- Corresponding angles have equal measures (F pattern)
- Same-side interior angles on same side of transversal, both inside parallel lines
- Same-side interior angles are supplementary, add up to 180° (C pattern)

Additional Angle Concepts

Angular Measurement and Geometry

- Radian: an alternative unit for measuring angles, based on the radius of a circle
- Arc: a portion of the circumference of a circle, often used to define angle measure
- Vertex: the point where two sides of an angle meet
- Congruence: when two angles have the same measure, they are considered congruent
- Trigonometry: a branch of mathematics that studies relationships between side lengths and angles of triangles

10.3 Triangles

Triangles come in various shapes and sizes, each with unique properties. From acute to obtuse, equilateral to scalene, understanding these differences helps us classify and analyze triangles effectively. Knowing the rules for congruence and similarity allows us to compare triangles and solve real-world problems.

Triangle concepts extend beyond basic geometry, influencing fields like architecture and engineering. The Pythagorean theorem, trigonometry, and area calculations are powerful tools derived from triangle properties. These principles form the foundation for more advanced mathematical and practical applications.

Triangle Classification and Properties

Types of triangles

- Classified by angles measures whether the angles are acute (less than 90°), right (exactly 90°), or obtuse (greater than 90°)

- Acute triangle has all three angles measuring less than 90° (equilateral, isosceles, scalene)
- Right triangle has one angle measuring exactly 90° (isosceles right, scalene right)
- The side opposite the right angle is called the hypotenuse
- Obtuse triangle has one angle measuring greater than 90° (isosceles obtuse, scalene obtuse)
- Classified by side lengths determines if the sides are equal or unequal
- Equilateral triangle has all three sides of equal length
- Consequently, all three angles measure 60°
- Isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length (legs) and one side of different length (base)
- The two angles opposite the equal sides (base angles) are also equal
- Scalene triangle has no sides of equal length
- Consequently, no angles are equal

Triangle congruence theorems

- Congruent triangles have exactly the same size and shape, with equal corresponding sides and angles
- SSS (Side-Side-Side) states if all three sides of one triangle are equal in length to the corresponding sides of another triangle, the triangles are congruent
- Example: If $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{DE}$, $\overline{BC} \cong \overline{EF}$, and $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{DF}$, then $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$
- SAS (Side-Angle-Side) states if two sides and the included angle of one triangle are equal to the corresponding parts of another triangle, the triangles are congruent
- The included angle is the angle between the two given sides
- Example: If $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{DE}$, $\angle B \cong \angle E$, and $\overline{BC} \cong \overline{EF}$, then $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$
- ASA (Angle-Side-Angle) states if two angles and the included side of one triangle are equal to the corresponding parts of another triangle, the triangles are congruent
- The included side is the side between the two given angles
- Example: If $\angle A \cong \angle D$, $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{DE}$, and $\angle B \cong \angle E$, then $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$
- AAS (Angle-Angle-Side) states if two angles and a non-included side of one triangle are equal to the corresponding parts of another triangle, the triangles are congruent
- The non-included side is a side not between the two given angles
- Example: If $\angle A \cong \angle D$, $\angle C \cong \angle F$, and $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{DE}$, then $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$

Similarity in triangles

- Similar triangles have the same shape but not necessarily the same size, with equal corresponding angles and proportional corresponding sides
- Corresponding angles are congruent (equal measure)
- Corresponding sides are proportional (in the same ratio)

- Proportionality in similar triangles means the ratios of corresponding side lengths are equal
- If $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$, then $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{AC}{DF}$
- This proportionality allows for solving missing side lengths when given sufficient information
- Similarity has real-world applications in fields like art (perspective), architecture (scale models), engineering (blueprints), and photography (resizing)
- Example: Using shadow lengths to calculate the height of a tree or building
- Example: Enlarging or reducing an image while maintaining its proportions

Additional Triangle Concepts

- The Pythagorean theorem relates the lengths of the sides in a right triangle: $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$, where c is the length of the hypotenuse
- Trigonometry uses the ratios of sides in right triangles to define sine, cosine, and tangent functions
- The area of a triangle can be calculated using the formula: $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$, where b is the base and h is the height (altitude)
- A median is a line segment that connects a vertex to the midpoint of the opposite side
- The centroid is the point where all three medians intersect, dividing each median in a 2:1 ratio

10.4 Polygons, Perimeter, and Circumference

Polygons are shapes with straight sides and angles. They come in various forms, from triangles to decagons and beyond. Understanding their properties helps us measure and classify them accurately.

Key aspects of polygons include perimeter, interior and exterior angles, and classification based on sides and angles. Circles, though not polygons, share some similar concepts like circumference and area calculations.

Polygons

Perimeter and circumference calculations

- Perimeter of a polygon
- Represents the total distance around the polygon by adding the lengths of all sides
- Calculated using the formula $P = s_1 + s_2 + \dots + s_n$, where s_i is the length of each side (square, pentagon)
- Circumference of a circle
- Measures the distance around the circle, similar to the perimeter of a polygon
- Determined using the formula $C = 2\pi r$, where r is the radius, or $C = \pi d$, where d is the diameter (coin, pizza)
- Measuring lengths
- Involves using measuring tools like rulers or tape measures to find side lengths or radius/diameter

- Requires converting all measurements to the same unit (inches, centimeters) before calculating perimeter or circumference

Interior and exterior angle measures

- Interior angles
- Formed inside the polygon where two adjacent sides meet
- Sum of all interior angles calculated using $(n - 2) \times 180^\circ$, where n is the number of sides (triangle: 180° , square: 360°)
- Each interior angle in a regular polygon measures $\frac{(n - 2) \times 180^\circ}{n}$ (regular pentagon: 108°)
- Exterior angles
- Created by extending a side of the polygon outward
- Always sum to 360° for any polygon, regardless of the number of sides
- Measure of each exterior angle in a regular polygon is $\frac{360^\circ}{n}$ (regular hexagon: 60°)
- Relationship between interior and exterior angles
- Adjacent interior and exterior angles form a straight line, making them supplementary (sum to 180°)

Classification of polygons

- Number of sides
- Polygons classified based on the number of sides they have (triangle: 3, octagon: 8)
- Names for polygons with 3 to 10 sides: triangle, quadrilateral, pentagon, hexagon, heptagon, octagon, nonagon, decagon
- Angles
- Acute polygons have all angles measuring less than 90° (acute triangle)
- Obtuse polygons have at least one angle greater than 90° (obtuse triangle)
- Right polygons have at least one angle equal to 90° (right triangle, rectangle)
- Sides
- Equilateral polygons have all sides equal in length (equilateral triangle, square)
- Equiangular polygons have all angles equal in measure (square, regular pentagon)
- Regular polygons are both equilateral and equiangular (square, regular hexagon)
- Convexity
- Convex polygons have all interior angles less than 180° (square, regular pentagon)
- Concave polygons have at least one interior angle greater than 180° (star shape, arrow shape)
- Symmetry
- Line symmetry occurs when a polygon can be divided into two congruent halves by a line (rectangle, isosceles triangle)

- Rotational symmetry happens when a polygon appears unchanged after rotating it about its center by a certain angle (square: 90° , 180° , 270° , equilateral triangle: 120° , 240°)

Basic elements of polygons

- Sides: The line segments that form the boundary of the polygon
- Vertices: The points where two sides of a polygon meet (singular: vertex)
- Angles: Formed by two adjacent sides of the polygon
- Area: The space enclosed within the polygon's boundaries

Circles

- A round shape with all points on its edge equidistant from the center
- Circumference is the distance around the circle (perimeter equivalent)
- Area is calculated using the formula $A = \pi r^2$, where r is the radius

10.5 Tessellations

Tessellations are fascinating patterns that cover surfaces without gaps or overlaps. They're created using shapes that fit together perfectly, like puzzle pieces. These patterns rely on transformations like sliding, flipping, and rotating to arrange shapes in repeating, predictable ways.

Regular polygons, such as triangles, squares, and hexagons, can create tessellations on their own. Their interior angles must divide evenly into 360° to work. Other shapes can be combined to form more complex patterns, opening up endless creative possibilities.

Properties and Creation of Tessellations

Properties of tessellations

- Cover a plane completely without any gaps or overlaps using one or more shapes that fit together perfectly
- Exhibit repeating patterns where the same shape or combination of shapes is used throughout and arranged in a consistent, predictable manner across the entire plane
- Created using transformations such as translations, rotations, reflections, and glide reflections applied to the shapes to allow them to fit together seamlessly

Transformations in tessellating patterns

- Translations slide a shape in a specific direction by a fixed distance in a straight line without changing its orientation or size
- Rotations turn a shape around a fixed point by a specific angle clockwise or counterclockwise while maintaining its size and shape
- Reflections flip a shape across a line, creating a mirrored reverse image while maintaining its size and shape
- Glide reflections combine a translation (sliding) and a reflection across a line while maintaining the size and shape of the original figure

- Complex tessellating patterns can be created by combining these transformations

Tessellations with Regular Polygons

Interior angles for regular tessellations

- Regular polygons have equal side lengths and equal interior angles
- Sum of interior angles of a polygon calculated using the formula: $(n - 2) \times 180^\circ$, where n is the number of sides
- For a regular polygon to tessellate a plane by itself, the interior angle must divide 360° evenly (be a factor of 360°) to avoid gaps or overlaps
- Equilateral triangles have 60° interior angles ($180^\circ \times \frac{1}{3}$) which divides 360° evenly ($360^\circ \div 60^\circ = 6$), allowing them to tessellate a plane by themselves
- Squares have 90° interior angles ($180^\circ \times \frac{1}{2}$) which divides 360° evenly ($360^\circ \div 90^\circ = 4$), allowing them to tessellate a plane by themselves
- Regular hexagons have 120° interior angles ($180^\circ \times \frac{2}{3}$) which divides 360° evenly ($360^\circ \div 120^\circ = 3$), allowing them to tessellate a plane by themselves
- Regular pentagons, heptagons, and other regular polygons with more than six sides cannot tessellate a plane by themselves because their interior angles do not divide 360° evenly, resulting in gaps or overlaps when attempting to tessellate
- Convex polygons, where all interior angles are less than 180° , are commonly used in tessellations due to their ability to fit together without creating inward-facing corners

Types of Tessellations

Periodic and Aperiodic Tilings

- Periodic tilings (tessellations) have a repeating pattern that can be translated in two independent directions to cover the entire plane
- Aperiodic tilings lack a repeating pattern that can be translated in two independent directions, yet still cover the plane without gaps or overlaps
- Monohedral tilings use only one shape (tile) to cover the plane, such as the regular tessellations with equilateral triangles, squares, or regular hexagons
- Dihedral tilings use two different shapes to create the tessellation pattern

10.6 Area

Geometric shapes are all around us, from the rooms we live in to the objects we use daily. Understanding how to calculate their areas is crucial for many real-world applications, like home improvement or landscaping.

Area calculations vary depending on the shape. Triangles, rectangles, and circles each have unique formulas. For more complex shapes, we can break them down into simpler components. This skill helps us tackle real-world problems involving composite shapes.

Area of Geometric Shapes

Area of common geometric shapes

- Triangle area calculated using $A = \frac{1}{2} \times \text{base} \times \text{height}$ (equilateral, isosceles, scalene)
- Quadrilateral areas:
 - Rectangle area found by multiplying length and width $A = \text{length} \times \text{width}$
 - Square area calculated by squaring the side length $A = \text{side}^2$
 - Parallelogram area determined using $A = \text{base} \times \text{height}$ where height is the perpendicular distance between parallel sides
 - Trapezoid area calculated with $A = \frac{1}{2}(\text{base}_1 + \text{base}_2) \times \text{height}$ where base_1 and base_2 are the parallel sides and height is the perpendicular distance between them
 - Regular polygon area found using $A = \frac{1}{2} \times \text{perimeter} \times \text{apothem}$ where apothem is the perpendicular distance from the center to any side of the polygon (hexagon, octagon)
- Circle area calculated with $A = \pi r^2$ where r is the radius and $\pi \approx 3.14159$

Unit conversions for area

- Conversion factors for common units of length:
 - 1 foot equals 12 inches
 - 1 yard equals 3 feet
 - 1 mile equals 5,280 feet
 - 1 meter equals 100 centimeters
 - 1 kilometer equals 1,000 meters
- To convert between units, multiply the given value by the appropriate conversion factor
- Convert 5 feet to inches: $5 \text{ feet} \times \frac{12 \text{ inches}}{1 \text{ foot}} = 60 \text{ inches}$
- Remember to square the conversion factor when dealing with area units
- Convert 9 square feet to square inches: $9 \text{ ft}^2 \times \left(\frac{12 \text{ in}}{1 \text{ ft}}\right)^2 = 1,296 \text{ in}^2$
- Common area unit conversions:
 - 1 square foot equals 144 square inches
 - 1 square yard equals 9 square feet
 - 1 acre equals 43,560 square feet
 - 1 square meter equals 10,000 square centimeters
 - 1 hectare equals 10,000 square meters
- Scale is important when converting between different units of measurement

Composite shape area calculation

- Identify the basic shapes that make up the composite shape (rectangles, circles, triangles)
- Calculate the area of each basic shape using the appropriate formula
- Add or subtract the areas of the basic shapes to find the total area of the composite shape 1. Addition used when the basic shapes do not overlap (L-shaped room) 2. Subtraction used when one shape is removed from another (circular hole in a square plate)
- Find the area of a rectangular pool with a circular jacuzzi: 1. Calculate the area of the rectangular pool using $A = \text{length} \times \text{width}$ 2. Calculate the area of the circular jacuzzi using $A = \pi r^2$ 3. Subtract the area of the jacuzzi from the area of the pool to find the total area
- Determine the area of a square room with a triangular closet: 1. Calculate the area of the square room using $A = \text{side}^2$ 2. Calculate the area of the triangular closet using $A = \frac{1}{2} \times \text{base} \times \text{height}$ 3. Add the areas of the room and closet to find the total area

Geometric concepts related to area

- Dimension refers to the number of measurements needed to describe a shape (2D shapes have length and width)
- Geometry is the branch of mathematics that deals with shapes, sizes, and positions of figures
- Surface area is the total area of all faces of a three-dimensional object
- Volume is the amount of space occupied by a three-dimensional object, often calculated using area as a base

10.7 Volume and Surface Area

Geometric measurements are all about understanding shapes and their properties. From surface area to volume, these formulas help us calculate the size and space of various 3D objects like prisms and cylinders.

But it's not just about math! These concepts have real-world applications too. We'll look at how to optimize packaging, design efficient containers, and solve practical problems using geometric measurements.

Geometric Measurements

Surface area and volume formulas

- Surface area formulas for right prisms
- General formula $SA = 2B + Ph$ calculates surface area using the area of the base (B), perimeter of the base (P), and height (h)
- Rectangular prism formula $SA = 2(lw + lh + wh)$ uses length (l), width (w), and height (h)
- Triangular prism formula $SA = bh + 2ls + ls_1 + ls_2$ uses base length (b), height (h), lateral length (l), and side lengths of the triangular base (s , s_1 , s_2)
- Surface area formula for right cylinders
- $SA = 2\pi rh + 2\pi r^2$ calculates surface area using the radius (r) and height (h)

- Volume formulas for right prisms
- General formula $V = Bh$ calculates volume using the area of the base (B) and height (h)
- Rectangular prism formula $V = lwh$ uses length (l), width (w), and height (h)
- Triangular prism formula $V = \frac{1}{2}bhl$ uses base length (b), height (h), and lateral length (l)
- Volume formula for right cylinders
- $V = \pi r^2 h$ calculates volume using the radius (r) and height (h)

Real-world optimization applications

- Maximizing volume given a fixed surface area
- Determines the dimensions that result in the greatest volume while using a limited amount of material (fixed surface area)
- Cylindrical can example finds the optimal height and radius to maximize the volume of the can given a fixed amount of material for the surface
- Minimizing surface area given a fixed volume
- Finds the dimensions that require the least amount of material (surface area) to contain a specific volume
- Rectangular box example determines the length, width, and height that minimize the material needed to make a box with a fixed volume
- Cost optimization
- Considers the cost of materials and the volume of goods to determine the most cost-effective dimensions for a container or package
- Shipping container example finds the optimal size that balances material costs with the volume of goods being transported

2D vs 3D geometric measurements

- Two-dimensional (2D) objects
- Flat shapes that have length and width but no depth (squares, rectangles, triangles, circles)
- Perimeter measures the distance around the outside of the shape
- Area measures the amount of space inside the shape
- Three-dimensional (3D) objects
- Shapes that have length, width, and depth or height (cubes, prisms, cylinders, spheres)
- Surface area measures the total area of all surfaces of the object
- Volume measures the amount of space inside the object
- Relationship between 2D and 3D
- 2D shapes form the bases and faces of 3D objects
- Rectangle (2D) can be the base of a rectangular prism (3D) and also forms the faces of the prism

Advanced 3D Shapes and Concepts

- Polyhedron: A 3D shape with flat polygonal faces, straight edges, and vertices
- Oblique shapes: 3D objects where the sides are not perpendicular to the base
- Frustum: The portion of a solid (often a cone or pyramid) that lies between two parallel planes cutting the solid
- Slant height: The distance from the apex to the base along the lateral surface in pyramids and cones

10.8 Right Triangle Trigonometry

The Pythagorean theorem is a powerful tool for solving right triangle problems and finding distances between points. It states that in a right triangle, the square of the hypotenuse equals the sum of the squares of the other two sides.

Special right triangles and trigonometric functions build on this foundation. 30-60-90 and 45-45-90 triangles have specific side ratios, while sine, cosine, and tangent relate angles to side lengths in right triangles.

Pythagorean Theorem and Distance

Pythagorean theorem applications

- States in a right triangle, the square of the hypotenuse length equals the sum of the squares of the other two side lengths $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$
- a and b represent the lengths of the triangle's legs (shorter sides)
- c represents the length of the triangle's hypotenuse (longest side)
- Find an unknown side length by substituting known values into the theorem and solving for the unknown variable
- Given a right triangle with legs measuring 3 and 4 units, find the hypotenuse length using $3^2 + 4^2 = c^2$, solving for $c = 5$ units
- Calculate the distance between two points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) using the distance formula derived from the theorem $d = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$
- Find the distance between points $(2, 3)$ and $(5, 7)$ by plugging into the formula $d = \sqrt{(5 - 2)^2 + (7 - 3)^2} = \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} = 5$ units

Special Right Triangles and Trigonometric Functions

Special right triangle ratios

- 30-60-90 right triangles have angle measures of 30° , 60° , and 90° with side length ratios of $1 : \sqrt{3} : 2$
- Shortest side opposite 30° angle, longest side (hypotenuse) opposite 90° angle, remaining side opposite 60° angle
- In a 30-60-90 triangle with hypotenuse 6, the side lengths are 3, $3\sqrt{3}$, and 6 units
- 45-45-90 right triangles have angle measures of 45° , 45° , and 90° with side length ratios of $1 : 1 : \sqrt{2}$
- Two shorter sides (legs) are equal in length, longest side (hypotenuse) opposite 90° angle

- In a 45-45-90 triangle with legs 5, the hypotenuse is $5\sqrt{2}$ units
- Solve problems by identifying the triangle type and using corresponding side length ratios to set up and solve equations
- Given a 30-60-90 triangle with hypotenuse 10, find the shorter leg length using the ratio $1 : \sqrt{3} : 2$, solving for the shorter leg $\frac{10}{2} = 5$ units

Trigonometric functions in triangles

- Express relationships between angles and side lengths of a right triangle
- Sine ($\sin$) = opposite / hypotenuse
- Cosine ($\cos$) = adjacent / hypotenuse
- Tangent ($\tan$) = opposite / adjacent
- Find a missing side length using the appropriate function with known angle measure and side length, then solve for the unknown side
- Given a right triangle with hypotenuse 13 and angle 30° , find the side adjacent to the angle using $\cos 30^\circ = \frac{x}{13}$, solving for $x = 13\cos 30^\circ \approx 11.3$ units
- Inverse functions ($\sin^{-1}$, $\cos^{-1}$, $\tan^{-1}$) find missing angle measures given the ratio of two side lengths
- If $\tan \theta = \frac{7}{24}$, find θ using $\theta = \tan^{-1}(\frac{7}{24}) \approx 16.3^\circ$
- These functions can be visualized on the unit circle, which represents all possible angle measures and their corresponding trigonometric values

Advanced Trigonometric Concepts

Angle measurement and trigonometric applications

- Radian measure provides an alternative way to express angles, where one radian is the angle subtended by an arc length equal to the radius of a circle
- The law of sines relates the ratios of sides to sines of opposite angles in any triangle, not just right triangles
- The law of cosines generalizes the Pythagorean theorem for any triangle, relating the square of one side to the squares of the other two sides and the cosine of the included angle
- Trigonometric identities are equations involving trigonometric functions that are true for all values of the variables
- Angles of elevation and depression are used in practical applications to measure the angle between the horizontal and the line of sight to an object above or below the observer, respectively

Unit 11 – Voting and Apportionment in Mathematics

11.1 Voting Methods

Voting systems shape how we choose leaders and make decisions. From simple plurality voting to complex ranked-choice methods, each system has its own way of translating voter preferences into outcomes.

No perfect voting system exists, as each has flaws and trade-offs. Understanding these systems helps us grasp the complexities of democracy and the challenges in fairly representing diverse viewpoints in decision-making processes.

Voting Systems

Voting systems comparison

- Plurality voting involves each voter selecting one candidate and the candidate with the most votes wins without requiring a majority (can lead to a winner not preferred by the majority)
- Ranked-choice voting (RCV) has voters rank candidates in order of preference, eliminating the candidate with the fewest votes and redistributing their ballots until a candidate receives a majority (ensures the winner has majority support)
- Borda count assigns points based on the ranking of candidates (3 points for 1st choice, 2 for 2nd, 1 for 3rd) and the candidate with the most points wins (considers the relative preference of each candidate)
- Pairwise comparison (Condorcet method) compares each candidate head-to-head against every other candidate and the winner is the candidate who defeats all others in pairwise comparisons (may not always produce a clear winner due to the Condorcet paradox)

Application of voting methods

- Plurality method counts the total number of first-choice votes for each candidate and the candidate with the most first-choice votes wins
- Ranked-choice voting (RCV) follows these steps: 1. Count the first-choice votes for each candidate 2. If no candidate has a majority, eliminate the candidate with the fewest votes 3. Redistribute the eliminated candidate's ballots to the next choice on each ballot 4. Repeat the process until a candidate receives a majority
- Borda count assigns points to each candidate based on their ranking on each ballot, sums the points for each candidate across all ballots, and the candidate with the most points wins
- Pairwise comparison (Condorcet method) compares each candidate against every other candidate in head-to-head matchups, determines the winner of each pairwise comparison based on majority preference, and the candidate who defeats all others in pairwise comparisons is the winner

Flaws in voting systems

- Plurality voting is susceptible to the "spoiler effect" where a third-party candidate splits the vote, can lead to a winner who is not preferred by the majority, and encourages strategic voting (voting for a less preferred but more likely to win candidate)
- Ranked-choice voting (RCV) may not always produce a winner who is the first choice of the majority and can be more complex for voters to understand and for election officials to implement
- Borda count is vulnerable to strategic voting by ranking a less-preferred candidate higher to lower the score of a strong opponent and may not always reflect the majority preference in head-to-head comparisons
- Pairwise comparison (Condorcet method) can result in a cyclical preference (A beats B, B beats C, C beats A), known as the Condorcet paradox, where there is no clear winner
- Arrow's Impossibility Theorem states that no voting system can satisfy all desirable criteria for fairness and consistency, highlighting the inherent limitations and trade-offs in designing voting systems

Electoral Systems and Representation

- Majority rule is a fundamental principle in many voting systems, where decisions are made based on the preferences of more than half of the voters
- Proportional representation aims to allocate seats in a legislative body in proportion to the overall voter preferences, ensuring diverse viewpoints are represented
- Various electoral systems (such as first-past-the-post or mixed-member proportional) implement different approaches to translating voter preferences into political representation
- Fairness criteria are used to evaluate voting methods, including criteria like monotonicity, independence of irrelevant alternatives, and Condorcet consistency

11.2 Fairness in Voting Methods

Voting methods shape how individual ballots turn into election results. Plurality voting is simple but can lead to spoiler effects, while ranked-choice and pairwise comparison methods capture more preference information but add complexity.

Fairness criteria help evaluate voting systems, but Arrow's Impossibility Theorem shows no perfect system exists. Each method makes trade-offs, and the choice of system can change election outcomes and voter behavior.

Voting Methods and Fairness Criteria

Voting methods and fairness criteria

- Plurality voting involves voters choosing a single candidate, and the candidate with the most votes wins
- Violates the majority criterion if a candidate wins without receiving more than 50% of the votes
- Violates the Condorcet criterion if a candidate who would win in a head-to-head matchup against every other candidate loses the election (spoiler effect)
- Ranked-choice voting (instant runoff) requires voters to rank candidates in order of preference

- If no candidate has a majority, the candidate with the fewest first-choice votes is eliminated, and their votes are redistributed to the next choice on each ballot
- Process repeats until a candidate achieves a majority (over 50%) of the votes
- Satisfies the majority criterion as the winner always has a majority of votes in the final round
- Can violate the Condorcet criterion in some cases (Burlington, Vermont mayoral election in 2009)
- Is an example of preferential voting, where voters express their preferences among candidates
- Pairwise comparison (Condorcet method) compares each candidate against every other candidate in head-to-head matchups
- If a candidate wins all their matchups, they are the Condorcet winner and the overall winner
- Always satisfies the Condorcet criterion by definition
- Can fail to produce a winner if there is no Condorcet winner due to circular preferences (Condorcet paradox)
- Borda count assigns points to candidates based on their position in each voter's ranking (e.g., $n-1$ points for first, $n-2$ for second, etc., where n is the number of candidates)
- Candidate with the most points wins the election
- Violates the majority criterion as a candidate can win without being the first choice of a majority of voters
- Violates the Condorcet criterion in some cases (1976 hypothetical election example with Carter, Ford, and Reagan)

Monotonicity in voting systems

- Monotonicity requires that if a voter raises a candidate in their ranking, it should not hurt that candidate's chances of winning
- Violations of monotonicity can lead to strategic voting and counterintuitive results
- Plurality voting satisfies monotonicity since raising a candidate in a voter's ranking can only help or have no effect on that candidate's chances of winning
- Ranked-choice voting can violate monotonicity in some cases where raising a candidate in a voter's ranking causes them to be eliminated earlier, changing the outcome (Burlington, Vermont mayoral election in 2009)
- Pairwise comparison satisfies monotonicity as raising a candidate in a voter's ranking can only help them in head-to-head matchups
- Borda count satisfies monotonicity since raising a candidate in a voter's ranking always increases their point total

Arrow's Impossibility Theorem implications

- Arrow's Impossibility Theorem states that no ranked voting system can simultaneously satisfy all of the following criteria: 1. Universality: The voting system should work for any possible set of voter preferences 2. Independence of Irrelevant Alternatives (IIA): The relative ranking of two candidates should depend only on voters' preferences between those two candidates, not on the presence or absence of other candidates 3. Non-dictatorship: The voting system should not allow a single voter's preferences to determine the outcome regardless of other voters' preferences 4. Pareto efficiency: If every voter prefers candidate A to candidate B, the voting system should rank A higher than B
- The theorem implies that any ranked voting system must make trade-offs between these desirable criteria
- Ranked voting systems can satisfy some of these criteria but not all simultaneously
- Pairwise comparison satisfies Pareto efficiency and IIA but violates universality (Condorcet paradox)
- Ranked-choice voting satisfies universality and non-dictatorship but violates IIA (spoiler effect)
- Borda count satisfies universality, non-dictatorship, and Pareto efficiency but violates IIA (1976 hypothetical election example)
- Designers of voting systems must prioritize which criteria are most important based on the context and goals of the election
- No perfect voting system exists that satisfies all desirable fairness criteria, so trade-offs and compromises are necessary to balance competing priorities and ensure the most fair and representative outcomes possible given the limitations

Electoral Systems and Representation

- Electoral systems are the set of rules that determine how votes are translated into seats in a representative body
- Different electoral systems can lead to varying levels of proportional representation, where the proportion of seats a party wins closely matches their share of the overall vote
- Some systems, like plurality voting in single-member districts, can result in disproportionate representation
- Proportional representation systems aim to allocate seats in proportion to the votes received by each party or group
- The choice of electoral system can influence voter behavior and party strategies, potentially leading to strategic voting where voters cast ballots not for their true preferences but to achieve a desired outcome

11.3 Standard Divisors, Standard Quotas, and the Apportionment Problem

Apportionment methods distribute seats fairly based on population. The standard divisor and quota calculations determine each group's share, while rounding techniques allocate whole seats. These methods strive for proportionality but face challenges with indivisible seats.

Different apportionment approaches can significantly impact representation and power distribution. The Hamilton, Jefferson, and Webster methods each have unique strengths and weaknesses in achieving

fairness and avoiding paradoxes. No single method is universally accepted as the best.

Apportionment Methods

Calculation of standard divisor and quota

- Calculates the standard divisor by dividing the total population by the total number of seats available
- Formula: $StandardDivisor = \frac{TotalPopulation}{TotalSeats}$
- Determines the average population per seat (U.S. House of Representatives, parliamentary seats)
- Computes the standard quota for each state or party by dividing its population by the standard divisor
- Formula: $StandardQuota_i = \frac{Population_i}{StandardDivisor}$
- Represents the fair share of seats for each state or party based on its proportion of the total population
- Exact quotas are usually fractional and must be rounded to allocate whole seats
- Rounds the standard quotas to whole numbers to determine the initial allocation of seats
- Rounding down to the nearest whole number gives the lower quota (guaranteed minimum seats)
- Rounding up to the nearest whole number gives the upper quota (maximum possible seats)
- Apportionment methods handle the remaining seats after initial allocation differently (Hamilton, Jefferson, Webster methods)
- Various rounding methods can be employed to address fractional quotas

Proportionality in fair distribution

- Proportionality ensures each group receives a share of the resource proportional to its size relative to the whole
- If a state has 20% of the total population, proportionality suggests it should receive 20% of the total seats (U.S. House seats, electoral votes)
- Achieves fair representation and equal influence based on population size
- The standard divisor and standard quotas aim to achieve proportionality in apportionment
- Distributes seats based on each state or party's population share
- Larger states or parties receive more seats than smaller ones
- Perfect proportionality is often unattainable due to indivisible seats and the need for whole number allocations
- Exact quotas are usually fractional (2.3 seats, 5.7 seats) and must be adjusted
- Apportionment methods approximate proportionality while balancing other priorities (avoiding paradoxes, minimizing deviation)
- Some degree of disproportionality is inevitable but methods strive to minimize it
- Proportional fairness is a key consideration in evaluating apportionment methods

Impact of apportionment methods

- Different apportionment methods yield different seat allocations with the same population and seat data
- Methods vary in rounding rules and prioritization of states or parties for remaining seats
- Choice of method can significantly impact the balance of power and representation (U.S. House, parliamentary majority)
- The Hamilton method guarantees no state receives more than its upper quota or fewer than its lower quota
- Population monotone: a state's seat share cannot decrease if its population increases relative to other states
- Susceptible to the Alabama paradox, where increasing total seats can cause a state to lose a seat
- The Jefferson method is house monotone, immune to the Alabama paradox
- Favors larger states by using a modified divisor greater than the standard divisor
- Not population monotone; can violate quota by giving a state more than its upper quota or fewer than its lower quota
- The Webster method is the only method that is both population monotone and house monotone
- Minimizes absolute deviation between a state's seat share and population share
- Tends to favor medium-sized states and produces quota violations less often than other methods
- No universally accepted "best" method; each has strengths and weaknesses in terms of fairness and satisfying desirable properties

Seat Allocation Considerations

- Population monotonicity ensures that as a state's population increases relative to others, its seat allocation does not decrease
- House monotonicity guarantees that when the total number of seats increases, no state loses seats
- The final seat allocation aims to balance proportional representation with practical constraints and mathematical properties

11.4 Apportionment Methods

Apportionment methods determine how seats are allocated in the House of Representatives. These methods use population data and mathematical formulas to distribute seats fairly among states. Each approach has its own quirks, favoring different sized states and yielding varied outcomes.

Hamilton's, Jefferson's, Adams's, and Webster's methods all aim for fair representation but differ in their calculations. They use divisors, quotas, and rounding techniques to allocate seats. Understanding these methods helps us grasp the complexities of political representation and its mathematical underpinnings.

Apportionment Methods

Application of apportionment methods

- Hamilton's method
 - Known as the "method of largest remainders" involves using a standard divisor (SD) and standard quota (SQ)
 - SD calculated by dividing the total population by the number of seats: $SD = \frac{\text{Total population}}{\text{Number of seats}}$
 - SQ_i for each state i calculated by dividing the state's population by the SD : $SQ_i = \frac{\text{Population of state } i}{SD}$
 - Allocates the whole number portion of each state's SQ (lower quota) as seats
 - Distributes remaining seats to states with the largest fractional remainders (California, Texas)
- Jefferson's method
 - Utilizes a modified divisor (d) to ensure the total allocated seats match the predetermined number
 - If the initial apportionment results in too many seats, d is increased
 - If the initial apportionment results in too few seats, d is decreased
 - Calculates each state's modified quota as $\frac{\text{Population of state } i}{d}$
 - Allocates the whole number portion of each state's modified quota, always rounding down (435 seats in the House)
- Adams's method
 - Employs a different modified divisor (d) compared to Jefferson's method
 - Seeks to find a modified divisor that allocates the correct total number of seats
 - Calculates each state's modified quota as $\frac{\text{Population of state } i}{d}$
 - Allocates the whole number portion of each state's modified quota rounded up, favoring small states (Wyoming, Vermont)
- Webster's method
 - Uses a modified divisor (d) to ensure the correct total number of seats is allocated
 - Calculates each state's modified quota as $\frac{\text{Population of state } i}{d}$
 - Rounds the modified quotas to the nearest whole number following standard rounding rules (0.5 and above rounds up)

Comparison of apportionment outcomes

- The quota rule states that each state should receive a number of seats within one of its quota (fair share)
- Quota of state i calculated as $\frac{\text{Population of state } i}{\text{Total population}} \times \text{Total number of seats}$
- Hamilton's method satisfies the quota rule but may favor larger states due to the allocation of remaining seats

- Jefferson's method violates the quota rule and favors larger states as it always rounds down
- Adams's method violates the quota rule and favors smaller states as it always rounds up
- Webster's method tends to satisfy the quota rule more frequently than Jefferson's or Adams's methods
- Rounding to the nearest whole number is considered more balanced and representative
- May still slightly favor medium-sized states in certain cases (Colorado, Minnesota)

Calculation of apportionment components

- Standard divisor (SD): $\frac{\text{Total population}}{\text{Number of seats}}$
- Standard quota (SQ_i) for state i : $\frac{\text{Population of state } i}{SD}$
- Modified divisor (d): Determined by adjusting the divisor until the total allocated seats equals the predetermined number
- For Jefferson's method, increase d if too many seats are allocated, decrease if too few
- For Adams's method, increase d if too few seats are allocated, decrease if too many
- For Webster's method, adjust d until the correct number of seats is allocated when rounding to the nearest whole number
- Modified quota (MQ_i) for state i : $\frac{\text{Population of state } i}{d}$
- Jefferson's method: Each state receives the whole number portion of its MQ (rounds down)
- Adams's method: Each state receives the whole number portion of its MQ rounded up
- Webster's method: Each state receives its MQ rounded to the nearest whole number

Principles and Considerations in Apportionment

- Population is the primary factor in determining seat allocation, ensuring representation based on the number of inhabitants in each state
- Proportional representation aims to allocate seats in a way that reflects each state's share of the total population
- Fairness in apportionment methods is evaluated based on how well they balance the interests of small and large states
- Rounding methods play a crucial role in how different apportionment systems allocate seats, affecting the final distribution

11.5 Fairness in Apportionment Methods

Apportionment methods aim to fairly distribute seats in representative bodies like Congress. These methods face challenges like the Alabama, population, and new-states paradoxes, which can lead to counterintuitive or seemingly unfair outcomes.

Different apportionment methods, such as Hamilton, Jefferson, Adams, and Webster, have varying strengths and weaknesses. They're evaluated based on criteria like the quota rule, monotonicity, and ability to avoid paradoxes, balancing fairness and practicality in representation.

Apportionment Paradoxes

Apportionment paradoxes and fairness

- Alabama paradox violates the expectation that a state should not lose representation when the total number of seats in the House increases (counterintuitive)
- Population paradox violates the expectation that states with larger population growth should gain more representation compared to states with smaller population growth (seems unfair)
- New-states paradox violates the expectation that the addition of a new state to the union should not cause an existing state to lose representation (appears illogical)

Apportionment Methods

Application of Hamilton method

- Hamilton method, also known as the largest remainder method, apportions seats based on each state's quota and fractional remainders
1. Calculate the standard divisor by dividing the total population of all states by the total number of seats in the House
2. Determine each state's quota by dividing its population by the standard divisor
3. Assign each state the whole number portion of its quota (lower quota)
4. Allocate any remaining seats to the states with the largest fractional remainders until all seats are distributed
- Identifying paradoxes in the Hamilton method
- Alabama paradox can occur when a state's fractional remainder falls just short of the cutoff for receiving an additional seat after the total number of seats increases
- Population paradox can occur when a state with a larger population increase has a smaller fractional remainder compared to a state with a smaller population increase, causing the latter to gain a seat instead
- New-states paradox can occur when the addition of a new state alters the standard divisor, resulting in an existing state's fractional remainder dropping below the threshold for retaining a seat

Comparison of apportionment methods

- Fairness criteria for evaluating apportionment methods
- Quota rule requires each state to receive a number of seats within one of its upper and lower quota (based on population proportion)
- Monotonicity ensures that no state loses a seat when the total number of seats in the House increases
- Population monotonicity guarantees that if state A's population grows faster than state B's, state A should not lose a seat to state B
- Avoiding the new-states paradox ensures that the addition of a new state to the union does not cause an existing state to lose a seat
- Hamilton method (largest remainder method)
- Satisfies the quota rule by assigning seats based on each state's quota
- Violates monotonicity, potentially leading to the Alabama paradox

- Violates population monotonicity, potentially causing the population paradox
- Violates the new-states paradox
- Jefferson method (greatest divisor method)
- Violates the quota rule, as some states may receive fewer seats than their lower quota
- Satisfies monotonicity, ensuring no state loses a seat when the total number of seats increases
- Satisfies population monotonicity, preventing a state with faster population growth from losing a seat to a state with slower growth
- Satisfies the new-states paradox, ensuring the addition of a new state does not cause an existing state to lose a seat
- Adams method (smallest divisor method)
- Satisfies the quota rule by assigning seats within each state's upper and lower quota
- Violates monotonicity, potentially causing a state to lose a seat when the total number of seats increases
- Violates population monotonicity, potentially allowing a state with slower population growth to gain a seat from a state with faster growth
- Violates the new-states paradox, as the addition of a new state may cause an existing state to lose a seat
- Webster method (major fractions method)
- Satisfies the quota rule, ensuring each state receives a number of seats within its upper and lower quota
- Satisfies monotonicity, preventing any state from losing a seat when the total number of seats increases
- Satisfies population monotonicity, ensuring a state with faster population growth does not lose a seat to a state with slower growth
- Violates the new-states paradox, as the addition of a new state may still cause an existing state to lose a seat

Fair Division and Proportional Representation

Apportionment and fair division

- Apportionment is a method of fair division used to allocate seats in a representative body (such as congressional apportionment)
- Proportional representation aims to ensure that the distribution of seats reflects the population distribution as closely as possible
- Divisor methods are a family of apportionment techniques that use different formulas to calculate seat allocations
- Fair division principles in apportionment seek to balance competing fairness criteria and minimize paradoxes

Unit 12 – Graph Theory

12.1 Graph Basics

Graphs are like maps of connections. They use dots (vertices) to show things and lines (edges) to show how they're linked. This helps us understand relationships in many areas, from social networks to road systems.

Graphs come in different types, like simple or multi, and have cool features like paths and cycles. They're super useful for solving real-world problems in areas like transportation, social media, and computer networks.

Graph Fundamentals

Components of a graph

- Vertices (nodes) represent objects, locations, or entities in a graph denoted by circles or dots (cities, people, computers)
- Edges represent connections or relationships between vertices denoted by lines connecting vertices (roads, friendships, network cables)
- Undirected edges indicate a bidirectional relationship between vertices (two-way roads)
- Directed edges (arcs) indicate a one-way relationship from one vertex to another (one-way streets)
- Weighted edges assign a value or cost to the connection (distance between cities, strength of relationships)
- Adjacent vertices are two vertices connected by an edge (neighboring cities)
- Degree of a vertex is the number of edges incident to a vertex
- In directed graphs, vertices have in-degrees (incoming edges) and out-degrees (outgoing edges)

Simple graphs vs multigraphs

- Simple graphs have no self-loops (edges that connect a vertex to itself) and no multiple edges between the same pair of vertices (at most one road between two cities)
- Multigraphs allow self-loops and multiple edges between the same pair of vertices (multiple flights between two airports)
- Complete graphs are simple graphs where every pair of vertices is connected by an edge (every person in a group knows each other)
- Sparse graphs have relatively few edges compared to the maximum possible number of edges (a road network with few intersections)
- Dense graphs have a large number of edges relative to the number of vertices (a highly connected social network)

Graph structures and properties

- Path: A sequence of vertices connected by edges, representing a route through the graph

- Cycle: A path that starts and ends at the same vertex, forming a loop in the graph
- Tree: A connected graph with no cycles, often used to represent hierarchical structures
- Connectivity: The degree to which a graph is connected, measured by the number of paths between vertices
- Graph traversal: The process of visiting all vertices in a graph, often used to search for specific elements or analyze graph structure

Applications of graph theory

- Geographical maps
 - Vertices represent locations (cities, towns, intersections) and edges represent roads or transportation routes connecting locations
 - Graph algorithms can find shortest paths (quickest route), optimize travel routes (efficient delivery), or analyze connectivity (identifying isolated areas)
- Social networks
 - Vertices represent individuals or entities and edges represent relationships or interactions between individuals (friends, followers, colleagues)
 - Graph metrics like centrality can identify influential nodes in the network (key opinion leaders)
 - Community detection algorithms can identify closely connected groups within the network (interest-based communities)
- Computer networks
 - Vertices represent devices (computers, routers, servers) and edges represent physical or logical connections between devices (Ethernet, Wi-Fi, fiber optic)
 - Graph algorithms can optimize network flow (load balancing), minimize latency (faster data transfer), or ensure fault tolerance (redundant paths)
- Resource allocation
 - Vertices represent tasks or resources and edges represent dependencies or constraints between tasks or resources (construction projects, course prerequisites)
 - Graph coloring algorithms can efficiently allocate resources while avoiding conflicts (scheduling exams, assigning radio frequencies)

12.2 Graph Structures

Graph theory helps us understand connections in networks. It's all about vertices (points) and edges (lines) that link them. We use graphs to model everything from social networks to transportation systems.

The Sum of Degrees Theorem and different types of cycles are key concepts. They help us analyze graph structures and find efficient paths through networks. Understanding these ideas is crucial for solving real-world problems using graphs.

Graph Structures and Properties

Sum of degrees theorem

- The degree of a vertex represents the number of edges incident to it
- In a graph without loops, the degree equals the number of adjacent vertices (neighbors)
- The Sum of Degrees Theorem establishes a relationship between the sum of the degrees of all vertices in a graph and twice the number of edges
- Theorem: $\sum_{v \in V} \deg(v) = 2|E|$
- $\sum_{v \in V} \deg(v)$ denotes the sum of the degrees of all vertices in the graph
- $|E|$ represents the total number of edges in the graph
- Each edge contributes to the degree of two vertices, explaining why the sum of degrees equals twice the number of edges
- Examples:
 - In a graph with 5 vertices and 7 edges, the sum of degrees is 14 (2×7)
 - For a complete graph K_4 with 4 vertices and 6 edges, the sum of degrees is 12 (2×6)

Types of cycles in graphs

- A cycle refers to a closed walk with no repeated vertices except for the starting and ending vertex
- The length of a cycle corresponds to the number of edges it contains
- Types of cycles:
 - Eulerian cycle: A cycle that uses every edge in the graph exactly once
 - A graph containing an Eulerian cycle is known as an Eulerian graph
 - Example: In a graph representing a network of roads, an Eulerian cycle would allow traversing all roads exactly once and returning to the starting point
 - Hamiltonian cycle: A cycle that visits every vertex in the graph exactly once
 - A graph containing a Hamiltonian cycle is called a Hamiltonian graph
 - Example: In a graph representing cities and their connections, a Hamiltonian cycle would represent a route that visits each city exactly once and returns to the starting city
- Cyclic subgraphs:
 - A subgraph consists of a subset of the vertices and edges of a graph
 - A cyclic subgraph contains at least one cycle within it
 - Examples of cyclic subgraphs:
 - Triangles: Cycles of length 3 (3 vertices and 3 edges)
 - Quadrilaterals: Cycles of length 4 (4 vertices and 4 edges)

- Pentagons: Cycles of length 5 (5 vertices and 5 edges)

Triangle counting in complete graphs

- A complete graph is a graph where every pair of distinct vertices is connected by a unique edge
- Denoted as K_n , where n represents the number of vertices
- The number of triangles in a complete graph can be calculated using the following formula:
- Number of triangles in $K_n = \binom{n}{3} = \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{6}$
- $\binom{n}{3}$ represents the binomial coefficient, which can be found using Pascal's Triangle
- Example: In a complete graph K_5 with 5 vertices, the number of triangles is $\binom{5}{3} = \frac{5 \times 4 \times 3}{6} = 10$
- Pascal's Triangle:
 - A triangular array of numbers where each number equals the sum of the two numbers directly above it
 - The k -th entry in the n -th row of Pascal's Triangle represents the binomial coefficient $\binom{n}{k}$
 - To find $\binom{n}{3}$, locate the 3rd entry in the n -th row of Pascal's Triangle
 - Example: In the 5th row of Pascal's Triangle (1, 4, 6, 4, 1), the 3rd entry is 6, which equals $\binom{5}{3}$
- Alternative formula for the number of triangles in K_n :
 - Number of triangles in $K_n = \frac{|E|(|E|-1)(|E|-2)}{6}$, where $|E| = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ is the number of edges in K_n
 - Example: In a complete graph K_6 with 6 vertices and 15 edges, the number of triangles is $\frac{15 \times 14 \times 13}{6} = 455$

Graph Theory Concepts

- Graph theory is a branch of mathematics that studies the properties and relationships of graphs
- Adjacency matrix: A square matrix used to represent a finite graph, where the element at position (i,j) indicates whether vertices i and j are adjacent
- Directed graph (digraph): A graph in which edges have a direction, represented by arrows
- Connectivity: A property of a graph that measures how well-connected it is
- A graph is connected if there is a path between every pair of vertices
- Tree: A connected graph with no cycles, where any two vertices are connected by exactly one path
- Trees are important in many applications, such as representing hierarchical structures

12.3 Comparing Graphs

Graph isomorphism focuses on structural equivalence between graphs. It helps you compare relationships in contexts like social networks, chemical compounds, and other systems that can be modeled with vertices and edges.

Techniques for determining isomorphism include analyzing vertex degrees, cyclic subgraphs, and graph invariants. Identifying isomorphisms involves mapping vertices while preserving adjacency.

Complementary graphs offer another tool for comparison.

Graph Isomorphism

Isomorphism determination techniques

- Analyze the structure, vertex degrees, and cyclic subgraphs of two graphs to determine if they are isomorphic
- Isomorphic graphs have the same number of vertices, edges, and overall structure despite potentially different vertex labels or visual representations
- Corresponding vertices in isomorphic graphs have the same degree, which is the number of edges incident to each vertex
- Compare the degree sequences (lists of vertex degrees) of the two graphs
- If the degree sequences differ, the graphs are not isomorphic as they have different vertex degree distributions
- Identify and count the presence of cyclic subgraphs such as triangles or squares in each graph
- If the number or types of cyclic subgraphs are not the same, the graphs are not isomorphic as they have different substructures
- Graphs that have the same number of vertices, edges, degree sequence, and cyclic subgraphs are likely to be isomorphic
- Consider graph invariants, which are properties that remain unchanged under isomorphism, to further compare graphs

Identification of graph isomorphisms

- An isomorphism is a bijective function f that maps vertices of one graph G_1 to vertices of another graph G_2 while preserving adjacency relationships
- If vertices u and v are connected by an edge in G_1 , then their mapped vertices $f(u)$ and $f(v)$ must also be connected by an edge in G_2
- To identify an isomorphism between two graphs, establish a one-to-one correspondence between their vertices
- Each vertex in G_1 should be paired with a unique vertex in G_2 such that the edge connections between corresponding vertices are preserved
- Name the isomorphism by listing the vertex correspondences as ordered pairs
- For example, $f = \{(a, 1), (b, 2), (c, 3), (d, 4)\}$ indicates that vertex a in G_1 maps to vertex 1 in G_2 , b maps to 2, c maps to 3, and d maps to 4
- Graph automorphisms are isomorphisms from a graph to itself, revealing symmetries within the graph structure

Complementary graphs for comparison

- The complement of a graph G , denoted as $\bar{G}$, is a graph with the same vertex set as G but with edges connecting vertices that are not adjacent in G
- If vertices u and v are connected by an edge in G , they are not connected by an edge in $\bar{G}$

- Conversely, if vertices u and v are not connected by an edge in G , they are connected by an edge in $\bar{G}$
- Constructing the complements of two graphs can aid in determining their isomorphism
- If G_1 is isomorphic to G_2 , then their complements $\bar{G}_1$ and $\bar{G}_2$ are also isomorphic
- Analyze the structure, vertex degrees, and cyclic subgraphs of the complementary graphs to compare their properties
- If the complements have the same structure, degree sequence, and cyclic subgraphs, the original graphs are likely to be isomorphic

Graph Theory Concepts

- Graph theory provides a framework for studying and comparing graphs
- Adjacency matrices can be used to represent graphs and aid in isomorphism comparisons
- Graph connectivity measures how well-connected a graph is and can be used to compare graph structures
- Various algorithms in graph theory can be applied to determine isomorphism and analyze graph properties

Applications and Examples

- Isomorphic graphs can represent the same underlying structure in various contexts, such as:
- Social networks with different individuals but identical connection patterns (Facebook, Twitter)
- Chemical compounds with different atom labels but the same bonding structure (isomers)
- Examples of non-isomorphic graphs include:
- A triangle, which is a cycle of length 3, and a square, which is a cycle of length 4
- A complete graph, where all vertices are connected to each other, and a star graph, where one central vertex is connected to all other vertices
- Complementary graphs can reveal insights into graph properties and relationships, for instance:
- The complement of a complete graph is an empty graph with no edges
- The complement of a bipartite graph, where vertices are divided into two sets with no edges within each set, is also a bipartite graph

12.4 Navigating Graphs

Graph traversals and coloring are key concepts in graph theory. They help us understand how to navigate and organize complex networks of information. These techniques have practical applications in scheduling, resource allocation, and problem-solving across various fields.

Walks, trails, and paths describe different ways to move through a graph. Graph coloring assigns colors to vertices, ensuring no adjacent ones share a color. These ideas are crucial for optimizing schedules, allocating resources, and solving real-world problems efficiently.

Graph Traversals

Walks, trails, and paths

- Walk represents a sequence of vertices and edges that begins and ends with vertices
- Allows repetition of vertices and edges (can revisit nodes and retrace steps)
- Closed walk (circuit) starts and ends at the same vertex (round trip)
- Trail is a walk in which no edge is repeated
- Vertices may be repeated (can revisit nodes but not retrace steps)
- Closed trail forms a circuit (round trip without retracing steps)
- Path is a walk in which no vertex or edge is repeated
- Most restrictive traversal (visit each node at most once)
- Closed path forms a cycle (round trip visiting each node once)
- An Euler path is a path that visits every edge exactly once

Graph Types and Properties

- Connectivity refers to how well-connected a graph is
- A graph is connected if there is a path between any two vertices
- Degree of a vertex is the number of edges connected to it
- Directed graph (digraph) has edges with a specific direction
- Weighted graph assigns values or weights to edges

Graph Coloring

Graph coloring techniques

- Graph coloring involves assigning colors to vertices of a graph
- Adjacent vertices must have different colors (no neighboring nodes can share a color)
- Applies to various scheduling and resource allocation problems
- Scheduling: vertices represent tasks or events, edges represent conflicts or constraints, colors represent time slots or resources
- Course timetabling (assign time slots to classes avoiding conflicts)
- Exam scheduling (assign exam slots to courses avoiding overlaps)
- Resource allocation: vertices represent objects or entities, edges represent compatibility or conflict, colors represent resources or categories
- Radio frequency assignment (assign frequencies to stations avoiding interference)
- Map coloring (assign colors to regions avoiding adjacent regions with the same color)

Chromatic number significance

- Chromatic number $\chi(G)$ represents the minimum number of colors needed to color a graph G
- Ensures no two adjacent vertices have the same color (proper coloring)
- Determines the minimum resources required in practical applications
- Time slots, frequencies, or channels needed in scheduling problems
- Minimum time slots to schedule all tasks without conflicts
- Minimum frequencies to assign to stations without interference
- Categories or types needed in resource allocation problems
- Minimum colors to distinguish all regions on a map
- Minimum types of resources to allocate to all entities without conflicts
- Lower chromatic number indicates more efficient resource utilization
- Fewer colors needed, more optimized solution (fewer time slots, frequencies, or categories required)
- Higher chromatic number suggests more complex constraints or conflicts
- More colors needed, less optimized solution (more time slots, frequencies, or categories required)
- A Hamilton path, which visits every vertex exactly once, can be useful in determining the chromatic number

12.5 Euler Circuits

Graphs are powerful tools for modeling connections. They can represent anything from social networks to transportation systems. Understanding graph connectivity helps us analyze how different parts of a system relate to each other.

Euler circuits are special paths that use every edge in a graph exactly once. They have practical applications in route planning and network design. Knowing how to identify and construct Euler circuits can help solve real-world problems efficiently.

Graph Connectivity

Connectivity of graphs

- A graph is connected if there is a path between every pair of vertices
- Path represents a sequence of edges that begins at a vertex of a graph and travels from vertex to vertex along edges of the graph (highway network connecting cities)
- A graph that is not connected is disconnected
- There exists at least one pair of vertices with no path between them (remote island with no bridge or ferry to mainland)
- A connected graph consists of a single component
- Component refers to a connected subgraph of a graph (contiguous land mass)

- A disconnected graph has two or more components
- Vertices of one component have no paths to vertices of another component (separate social cliques with no mutual friends)

Euler Circuits

Euler circuit theorem application

- An Euler circuit is a circuit that uses every edge of a graph exactly once
- Circuit denotes a path that begins and ends at the same vertex (round-trip flight itinerary)
- A graph is called Eulerian if it contains an Euler circuit
- Euler's Circuit Theorem states that a connected graph is Eulerian if and only if each vertex has even degree
- Degree of a vertex represents the number of edges incident with it (number of roads leading into an intersection)
- An even degree vertex has a degree that is a multiple of 2 (4-way stop sign)
- If a graph has one or more vertices with odd degree, it is not Eulerian
- An odd degree vertex has a degree that is not a multiple of 2 (dead-end street)
- The concept of Euler circuits was first explored in the Königsberg bridge problem

Construction of Euler circuits

- To find an Euler circuit in an Eulerian graph: 1. Choose any vertex to start, and trace a circuit back to this vertex, using as many unused edges as possible 2. If any unused edges remain, start a new circuit at a vertex in the previous circuit that has unused edges 3. Trace this new circuit back to its starting point, using only previously unused edges 4. Combine the circuits by starting at the vertex where the second circuit started, follow the second circuit, and then follow the first circuit
- Repeat steps 2-4 if unused edges remain, starting at any vertex in the combined circuit that has unused edges
- Always trace the new circuit first when combining (draw inner loop before connecting outer loop)
- The process ends when no unused edges remain, resulting in an Euler circuit (single continuous line that covers entire graph)

Advanced Graph Concepts

Graph representations and properties

- Adjacency matrix: A square matrix used to represent a finite graph, where the elements indicate whether pairs of vertices are adjacent or not
- Planar graph: A graph that can be drawn on a plane without any edges crossing
- Graph isomorphism: A bijective correspondence between the vertices of two graphs that preserves the edge connectivity

- Hamiltonian circuit: A path in an undirected or directed graph that visits each vertex exactly once and returns to the starting vertex

12.6 Euler Trails

Euler trails are fascinating paths in graphs that use every edge exactly once. They're like drawing a shape without lifting your pen or planning a city tour that covers every street without repeating.

Bridges and local bridges play a key role in Euler trails. Understanding vertex degrees helps determine if a graph has an Euler trail or circuit. Fleury's algorithm is a practical way to find these paths in graphs.

Euler Trails

Bridges and local bridges

- Bridges are edges in a graph that disconnect the graph into two or more components when removed (London Bridge, Golden Gate Bridge)
- Removing a bridge increases the number of connected components
- Graphs with bridges cannot have Euler circuits because removing the bridge breaks the path
- Local bridges are edges that create new bridges when removed but do not disconnect the graph (Tower Bridge, Brooklyn Bridge)
- Removing a local bridge creates a new bridge in the graph
- Graphs with local bridges can have Euler trails but not Euler circuits since the local bridge must be traversed last

Application of Fleury's algorithm

- Fleury's algorithm finds Euler trails or circuits in graphs by following these steps: 1. Choose a starting vertex (if two vertices have odd degree, start at one of them) 2. Follow an edge to an adjacent vertex, erasing the edge as you go (like drawing a path without lifting the pen) 3. Stop if no edges are left 4. Choose a non-bridge edge if possible, otherwise use the only remaining edge 5. Repeat steps 2-4 until all edges are traversed (like completing a maze)
- The resulting path is an Euler trail or circuit depending on the starting and ending vertices (Königsberg bridge problem, Seven Bridges of Königsberg)

Euler trails and vertex degrees

- Vertex degree is the number of edges connected to a vertex (like the number of roads leading into a city)
- Euler trails are paths that use every edge in a graph exactly once (like walking every street in a city without repeating)
- Graphs have Euler trails if they are connected and have either zero or two vertices with odd degree
- If two vertices have odd degree, they must be the start and end points of the Euler trail (like starting and ending a city tour at specific locations)
- Euler circuits are Euler trails that start and end at the same vertex (like a circular city tour)

- Graphs have Euler circuits if they are connected and all vertices have even degree (like every city having an even number of roads leading in and out)
- To determine if a graph has an Euler trail or circuit: 1. Check if the graph is connected (there is a path between every pair of vertices) 2. Count the vertices with odd degree
- No odd degree vertices → Euler circuit exists
- Exactly two odd degree vertices → Euler trail exists
- More than two odd degree vertices → No Euler trail or circuit exists

Graph Theory Concepts Related to Euler Trails

- Graph theory is the mathematical study of structures consisting of vertices and edges, which provides the foundation for understanding Euler trails
- Traversability refers to the possibility of traversing all edges in a graph, which is a key concept in Euler trails
- A path is a sequence of vertices connected by edges, while a cycle is a path that starts and ends at the same vertex
- Connectivity in a graph ensures that there is a path between any two vertices, which is crucial for the existence of Euler trails

12.7 Hamilton Cycles

Hamilton cycles are a fascinating aspect of graph theory, showing how vertices connect in a single loop. They differ from Euler circuits, which focus on edges instead. Understanding these cycles helps us grasp complex network structures and solve real-world problems.

Complete graphs always have Hamilton cycles, and we can calculate how many using a simple formula. Finding the minimum weight Hamilton cycle is crucial for optimization problems like the traveling salesman problem, which has practical applications in logistics and route planning.

Hamilton Cycles

Hamilton cycles vs Euler circuits

- Hamilton cycles visit each vertex in a graph exactly once, starting and ending at the same vertex without repeating any vertices except the starting/ending vertex
- Euler circuits visit each edge in a graph exactly once, starting and ending at the same vertex and may repeat vertices but not edges
- A graph can have both Hamilton cycles and Euler circuits (complete graph K_4), only one, or neither
- Example: In a complete graph K_4 , a Hamilton cycle is 1-2-3-4-1 and an Euler circuit is 1-2-3-1-4-2-4-3-1

Number of cycles in complete graphs

- Complete graphs K_n have n vertices with each vertex connected to every other vertex
- The number of Hamilton cycles in a complete graph K_n is calculated using the formula $\frac{(n-1)!}{2}$

- $(n - 1)!$ represents the possible orderings of the remaining $n - 1$ vertices after choosing a starting vertex
- Dividing by 2 eliminates duplicate cycles in opposite directions (1-2-3-4-1 and 1-4-3-2-1 are the same cycle)
- Example: A complete graph K_5 has $\frac{(5-1)!}{2} = \frac{4!}{2} = \frac{24}{2} = 12$ Hamilton cycles

Minimum weight Hamilton cycles

- Weighted graphs have numerical values (weights) assigned to their edges
- The total weight of a Hamilton cycle is the sum of the weights of the edges in the cycle
- To find the Hamilton cycle with the minimum total weight: 1. List all possible Hamilton cycles in the graph 2. Calculate the total weight of each cycle by summing the weights of its edges 3. Compare the total weights and identify the cycle(s) with the minimum value
- Example: In a weighted complete graph K_4 with edge weights 1-2: 4, 1-3: 2, 1-4: 6, 2-3: 3, 2-4: 5, 3-4: 1, the Hamilton cycles and their total weights are:
 - 1-2-3-4-1: $4 + 3 + 1 + 6 = 14$
 - 1-2-4-3-1: $4 + 5 + 1 + 2 = 12$
 - 1-3-2-4-1: $2 + 3 + 5 + 6 = 16$
 - 1-3-4-2-1: $2 + 1 + 5 + 4 = 12$
 - 1-4-2-3-1: $6 + 5 + 3 + 2 = 16$
 - 1-4-3-2-1: $6 + 1 + 3 + 4 = 14$
- The Hamilton cycles with the minimum total weight of 12 are 1-2-4-3-1 and 1-3-4-2-1
- This concept is closely related to the traveling salesman problem in optimization

Graph Theory Concepts Related to Hamilton Cycles

- Graph theory provides the foundation for understanding Hamilton cycles
- A path in a graph is a sequence of vertices connected by edges, where no vertex is repeated
- A cycle is a path that starts and ends at the same vertex
- Adjacency refers to the relationship between two vertices connected by an edge
- A Hamiltonian graph is a graph that contains at least one Hamilton cycle
- The existence of a Hamilton cycle in a graph depends on various factors, including the graph's structure and connectivity

12.8 Hamilton Paths

Hamilton paths are a fascinating concept in graph theory. They involve traversing a graph by visiting each vertex exactly once, without repeating any. This unique path-finding challenge has applications in route planning, optimization, and even puzzle-solving.

Finding Hamilton paths can be tricky, as not all graphs have them. Strategies include avoiding bridge edges, checking connectivity, and prioritizing low-degree vertices. These techniques help navigate the complexities of graph structures and find efficient solutions to real-world problems.

Hamilton Paths

Characteristics of Hamilton paths

- Visits each vertex in a graph exactly once, ensuring no vertex is repeated along the path
- Covers all vertices without revisiting any (Konigsberg bridge problem)
- Differs from Euler paths, which visit each edge exactly once
- Has a distinct starting vertex and ending vertex that may or may not be directly connected by an edge
- Path begins at the designated start vertex and concludes at the end vertex
- Start and end vertices can be chosen arbitrarily if multiple Hamilton paths exist (Icosian game)
- Represents a specific type of graph traversal in graph theory

Existence of Hamilton paths

- Graphs containing bridge edges cannot have a Hamilton path since removing a bridge disconnects the graph
- Bridge edges are critical connections whose removal splits the graph into separate components
- Impossible to visit all vertices in a single path if a bridge edge is removed (Königsberg bridges)
- Specific vertex configurations in a graph guarantee the presence of a Hamilton path
- Graphs with exactly two odd-degree vertices (start and end) and all other vertices having even degree always have a Hamilton path
- Odd-degree vertices must serve as the path's endpoints to maintain path continuity
- Complete graphs, where every vertex directly connects to all other vertices, invariably possess a Hamilton path (Icosian game)

Strategies for finding Hamilton paths

1. Identify and exclude bridge edges from consideration, as they cannot be part of a Hamilton path due to graph disconnection - Removing a bridge edge splits the graph, preventing a continuous path through all vertices
2. Verify the graph's connectivity and absence of isolated components, ensuring a path can reach all vertices - Isolated components make it impossible to construct a single path covering the entire graph
3. Explore vertex adjacency when building the path, selecting unvisited neighboring vertices to expand the path - If a dead-end is encountered, backtrack and investigate alternative path options (Depth-first search)
4. Prioritize vertices with lower degrees first, as they offer limited path extension possibilities - Leave high-degree vertices for later, providing greater flexibility in path choices (Heuristic approach) - Visiting low-degree vertices early reduces the risk of getting stuck or having to backtrack

Applications and Related Concepts

- Hamilton paths are used in optimization problems to find efficient routes or sequences
- The study of Hamilton paths involves elements of combinatorics, exploring possible arrangements of vertices
- Various algorithms have been developed to find or approximate Hamilton paths in different types of graphs

12.9 Traveling Salesperson Problem

The Traveling Salesperson Problem is a classic optimization challenge. It's about finding the shortest route that visits every city once and returns to the start. This problem showcases the difficulty of finding optimal solutions in complex scenarios.

Various algorithms tackle this problem, from brute force to more sophisticated approaches. While some guarantee optimal solutions but are slow, others provide quick approximations. The choice depends on the specific needs and constraints of the situation.

Traveling Salesperson Problem

Algorithms for Traveling Salesperson Problem

- Brute force algorithm generates all possible Hamilton cycles (complete tours visiting each vertex exactly once) in a weighted graph, calculates the total weight (sum of edge weights) of each Hamilton cycle, and selects the Hamilton cycle with the lowest total weight as the optimal solution to minimize travel distance or cost
- Greedy algorithms provide faster but potentially suboptimal solutions to the Traveling Salesperson Problem
- Nearest neighbor algorithm starts at a randomly selected vertex, visits the nearest unvisited vertex at each step based on edge weights, and returns to the starting vertex after visiting all vertices to form a complete tour
- Cheapest link algorithm starts with the cheapest edge in the graph, adds the next cheapest edge that doesn't create a cycle or a vertex with degree 3 (already connected to 3 other vertices), and continues until a Hamilton cycle is formed
- Dynamic programming can be used to solve the Traveling Salesperson Problem by breaking it down into smaller subproblems and storing solutions to avoid redundant calculations

Hamilton cycles in complete graphs

- Complete graph is a graph in which every pair of vertices is connected by an edge, allowing for many possible Hamilton cycles (complete tours)
- Number of distinct Hamilton cycles in a complete graph with n vertices can be calculated using the formula $\frac{(n-1)!}{2}$
- In a complete graph with 4 vertices (K_4), there are $\frac{(4-1)!}{2} = \frac{3!}{2} = 3$ distinct Hamilton cycles (possible complete tours)
- As the number of vertices in a complete graph increases, the number of distinct Hamilton cycles grows rapidly due to factorial growth

- K_5 (complete graph with 5 vertices) has $\frac{(5-1)!}{2} = \frac{4!}{2} = 12$ distinct Hamilton cycles
- K_6 (complete graph with 6 vertices) has $\frac{(6-1)!}{2} = \frac{5!}{2} = 60$ distinct Hamilton cycles

Brute force vs nearest neighbor methods

- Brute force method guarantees finding the optimal solution (lowest-weight Hamilton cycle) but has a time complexity of $O(n!)$, where n is the number of vertices, making it impractical for large graphs due to factorial growth in computation time
- Nearest neighbor method is a heuristic approach that finds a reasonably good solution quickly with a time complexity of $O(n^2)$, where n is the number of vertices, making it more efficient than the brute force method, especially for large graphs
- However, the nearest neighbor method does not guarantee finding the optimal solution and may produce suboptimal results, particularly in graphs with many vertices
- There is a trade-off between efficiency and accuracy when choosing between brute force and nearest neighbor methods for solving the Traveling Salesperson Problem
- Brute force is slow but accurate, guaranteeing the optimal solution
- Nearest neighbor is fast but potentially suboptimal, providing a good approximation quickly

Advanced Techniques for Solving TSP

- Computational complexity of the Traveling Salesperson Problem is NP-hard, making it challenging to solve optimally for large instances
- Heuristics and approximation algorithms are used to find near-optimal solutions in reasonable time
- Local search techniques iteratively improve a solution by making small changes to the current tour
- Metaheuristics, such as genetic algorithms or simulated annealing, combine multiple strategies to explore the solution space more effectively

12.10 Trees

Tree graphs are a fundamental concept in mathematics and computer science. They're simple yet powerful structures that model hierarchical relationships and connections without cycles. Understanding trees is crucial for solving problems in various fields.

Tree graphs have unique properties that set them apart from other graph types. With one less edge than vertices and a single path between any two nodes, trees provide efficient ways to organize and traverse data. Spanning trees and minimum spanning trees are essential applications in network design and optimization.

Tree Graphs

Key characteristics of trees

- Connected graphs with a path between every pair of vertices
- Acyclic graphs that do not contain any cycles (closed paths)
- Number of edges (e) is always one less than the number of vertices (n): $e = n - 1$

- A tree with 5 vertices will always have 4 edges
- Unique path exists between any two vertices (no alternate routes)
- Removing any edge disconnects the graph into two separate components
- Adding any edge creates a cycle (destroys the tree property)
- Trees have a hierarchical structure with a single root node at the top

Methods for spanning tree construction

- Spanning tree is a subgraph that includes all vertices of the original graph
- Spans all vertices while maintaining a tree structure (no cycles)
- Path-finding method: 1. Choose any starting vertex 2. Traverse the graph (depth-first or breadth-first search) 3. Add each visited edge to the spanning tree 4. Stop when all vertices have been visited
- Edge removal method: 1. Start with the original graph 2. Repeatedly remove edges that are part of cycles 3. Stop when no more cycles remain
- The remaining graph is a spanning tree

Kruskal's algorithm for minimum spanning trees

- Finds the minimum spanning tree (MST) of a weighted graph
- MST is the spanning tree with the minimum total edge weight
- Algorithm steps: 1. Sort all edges by non-decreasing weight 2. Create a forest F (set of trees), each vertex as a separate tree 3. Create an empty set S to store MST edges 4. While S has less than $n - 1$ edges and F has multiple components:
 - Remove the smallest weight edge e from the sorted list
 - If adding e to F does not create a cycle:
 - Add e to S
 - Merge the trees in F connected by e 5. Return S , the set of edges forming the minimum spanning tree
- Greedily selects the smallest weight edges that maintain a tree structure
- Guarantees the minimum total edge weight among all spanning trees

Tree Structure and Terminology

- Root: The topmost node in a tree, from which all other nodes descend
- Leaf: A node with no children, typically found at the bottom of the tree
- Branch: An edge connecting two nodes in the tree
- Degree: The number of children a node has
- Height: The length of the longest path from the root to a leaf
- Binary tree: A tree in which each node has at most two children

- Traversal: The process of visiting all nodes in a tree in a specific order (e.g., pre-order, in-order, post-order)

Unit 13 – Math and...

13.1 Math and Art

The golden ratio, a mathematical concept of about 1.618, pops up everywhere in nature and art. It's in plant patterns, human body proportions, and even our faces. This ratio is often seen as pleasing to the eye.

The Fibonacci sequence, where each number is the sum of the two before it, is closely linked to the golden ratio. As you go further in the sequence, the ratio between adjacent numbers gets closer and closer to that magical 1.618.

The Golden Ratio and Fibonacci Numbers

Golden ratio in nature and anatomy

- Golden ratio of approximately 1.618 appears frequently in nature and is considered aesthetically pleasing
- Found in spiral arrangement of leaves and branches in plants (sunflower seed pattern)
- Observed in proportions of the human body
- Ratio of total height to height of the navel close to golden ratio
- Ratio of length of hand to length of forearm near golden ratio
- Seen in proportions of the human face
- Ratio of distance between eyes to width of nose often close to golden ratio
- Ratio of distance from top of head to chin compared to distance from lips to chin approximately equal to golden ratio
- Appears in sacred geometry, which explores geometric patterns found in nature and religious symbolism

Fibonacci ratios vs golden ratio

- Fibonacci sequence is series of numbers where each number is sum of two preceding ones (0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, ...)
- As Fibonacci sequence progresses, ratio between adjacent numbers converges to golden ratio
- $8/5 = 1.6$, $13/8 = 1.625$, $21/13 = 1.615$, $34/21 = 1.619$, and so on
- Further along sequence, closer ratio gets to golden ratio of approximately 1.618
- To calculate ratio between adjacent Fibonacci numbers: 1. Divide any Fibonacci number by previous number in sequence 2. F_n/F_{n-1} approaches golden ratio as n increases

Golden rectangles in art and architecture

- Golden rectangle is rectangle with side lengths in golden ratio of approximately 1:1.618
- Used in art and architecture for centuries due to aesthetically pleasing proportions
- Parthenon in Athens, Greece (440 BC) incorporates golden rectangles in facade

- Overall dimensions of structure and spacing of columns closely approximate golden rectangles
- "Mona Lisa" by Leonardo da Vinci believed to have been composed using golden rectangles
- Dimensions of painting itself and placement of key elements within composition align with golden rectangle proportions
- United Nations Secretariat Building in New York City (1952) features golden rectangle facade
- Building's proportions, with width-to-height ratio of approximately 1:1.618, exemplify use of golden ratio in modern architecture

Mathematical concepts in art

- Perspective: Mathematical technique used in visual arts to create the illusion of depth and space on a flat surface
- Tessellation: Repetitive pattern of geometric shapes that fit together without gaps or overlaps, often used in decorative art and architecture
- Fractals: Self-similar patterns that repeat at different scales, found in nature and used in computer-generated art
- Platonic solids: Five regular polyhedra (tetrahedron, cube, octahedron, dodecahedron, and icosahedron) that have been used in art and design for their symmetry and aesthetic appeal

13.2 Math and the Environment

Energy consumption and costs impact our daily lives and the environment. Understanding kilowatt-hours helps us track electricity usage and estimate costs. This knowledge empowers us to make informed decisions about our energy consumption and its financial implications.

Water conservation methods, like low-flow showerheads and efficient toilets, can significantly reduce water usage. These simple changes not only save money but also contribute to sustainability efforts. Solar energy offers a renewable alternative to fossil fuels, reducing greenhouse gas emissions and promoting energy independence.

Energy Consumption and Costs

Energy consumption in kilowatt-hours

- Kilowatt-hour (kWh) represents a unit of energy equivalent to 1,000 watt-hours
- Calculated by multiplying the power in kilowatts by the number of hours of use (a 100-watt light bulb operating for 10 hours consumes 1 kWh)
- Commonly used to measure electrical energy consumption in households and businesses (monthly electricity bill)
- Allows for easy comparison of energy usage across different devices and appliances (refrigerator vs. air conditioner)
- Helps in estimating the cost of running electrical devices over a specific period (month or year)
- Useful for calculating an individual's or organization's carbon footprint

Water savings from conservation methods

- Low-flow showerheads reduce water usage by restricting water flow to 2.0 gallons per minute (gpm) or less compared to standard showerheads at 2.5 gpm or more
- Saves up to 20% of water consumption during showers (2,000 gallons per year for a family of four)
- Water-efficient toilets use 1.6 gallons per flush (gpf) or less, while standard toilets consume 3.5 gpf or more
- Saves approximately 13,000 gallons of water per year for a family of four
- Fixing leaky faucets and pipes prevents water waste (a faucet dripping at 1 drop per second wastes over 3,000 gallons per year)
- Implementing water-saving practices (turning off faucets while brushing teeth or shaving) reduces water consumption
- Contributes to overall resource management and sustainability efforts

History and advantages of solar energy

- Photovoltaic effect discovered by Alexandre Edmond Becquerel in 1839, laying the foundation for solar cell technology
- First solar cell created by Charles Fritts in 1883 using selenium wafers, demonstrating the potential for harnessing solar energy
- Practical silicon solar cell developed by Bell Labs in 1954, marking a significant milestone in solar energy technology
- Continued advancements led to improved solar cell efficiency and the development of thin-film solar cells (more flexible and cost-effective)
- Concentrating solar power (CSP) systems use mirrors to focus sunlight and generate heat for electricity production (large-scale solar power plants)
- Solar energy offers a renewable and sustainable alternative to fossil fuels (reduces greenhouse gas emissions)
- Decreases long-term energy costs for households and businesses (lower electricity bills)
- Promotes energy independence by reducing reliance on imported fossil fuels (domestic energy production)
- Plays a crucial role in mitigating climate change by reducing reliance on fossil fuels

Water Conservation

Solar Energy Technology

Environmental Impact and Sustainability

- Environmental impact assessments help evaluate the potential effects of projects or policies on the environment

- Ecological footprint measures human demand on nature, comparing consumption of natural resources to Earth's ecological capacity
- Renewable energy sources, such as solar and wind power, offer alternatives to fossil fuels and help reduce environmental impact
- Effective resource management is crucial for maintaining environmental balance and ensuring long-term sustainability

13.3 Math and Medicine

Pharmaceutical calculations help healthcare professionals administer accurate drug doses. For liquid drugs, the relationship between dosage, concentration, and volume determines how much medication a patient should receive.

Vaccine development and disease modeling also rely on mathematics. Timeline comparisons show how vaccine development can be planned or accelerated, while graph theory helps model disease spread and guide containment strategies.

Pharmaceutical Calculations

Volume calculation for liquid drugs

- Understand the relationship between dosage, concentration, and volume
- Dosage represents the prescribed amount of drug, usually measured in milligrams (mg) or micrograms (mcg)
- Concentration indicates the amount of drug per unit volume, typically expressed in mg/mL or mcg/mL
- Volume refers to the amount of liquid drug required to deliver the prescribed dosage
- Use the formula: $Volume = \frac{Dosage}{Concentration}$
- For example, if the prescribed dosage is 500 mg and the concentration is 50 mg/mL, the volume needed is calculated as $\frac{500mg}{50mg/mL} = 10mL$
- Convert units as necessary to ensure consistency in the calculation
- If the dosage is given in grams (g) and the concentration in mg/mL, convert grams to milligrams (1 g = 1000 mg) before calculating the volume to maintain unit consistency
- Consider pharmacokinetics when determining dosage and administration schedules

Vaccine Development and Disease Modeling

Timeline comparison of vaccine development

- Typical vaccine development timeline spans several years
 1. Exploratory stage: 2-4 years spent identifying potential antigens and developing vaccine candidates
 2. Pre-clinical stage: 1-2 years conducting animal studies to assess safety and immunogenicity
 3. Clinical development: 5-10 years progressing through Phase 1, 2, and 3 human clinical trials (clinical trials)
 4. Regulatory review and approval: 1-2 years for agencies to review trial data and grant approval
 5. Manufacturing and distribution: Ongoing process to produce and distribute the approved vaccine
- Accelerated COVID-19 vaccine development timeline achieved through various strategies

- Overlapping phases and parallel processing
- Clinical trial phases conducted simultaneously rather than sequentially to save time
- Manufacturing processes initiated while clinical trials were still ongoing to prepare for rapid distribution
- Increased funding and resources
- Governments and organizations heavily invested in vaccine development to provide necessary resources
- Collaboration between pharmaceutical companies and research institutions streamlined efforts
- Expedited regulatory review and approval
- Emergency Use Authorization (EUA) granted based on preliminary data to allow faster access
- Continuous monitoring of vaccine safety and efficacy implemented post-approval to ensure ongoing assessment

Graph theory in disease spread modeling

- Represent individuals as nodes (vertices) and contacts between them as edges in a graph
- Infected individuals depicted as "infected" nodes to track disease spread
- Susceptible individuals represented as "susceptible" nodes to identify potential transmission routes
- Use contact tracing to identify and isolate potentially infected individuals
- Trace the edges from an infected node to identify contacts and map transmission paths
- Test and quarantine contacts to prevent further spread and contain the outbreak
- Analyze the graph structure to understand disease spread patterns
- Identify clusters (connected components) of infected nodes to detect localized outbreaks
- Determine the degree (number of contacts) of infected nodes to assess potential "super-spreaders"
- Use graph metrics to inform public health strategies
- Degree distribution: Implement targeted interventions for high-degree nodes (individuals with many contacts)
- Centrality measures: Prioritize vaccination for nodes with high betweenness (connecting different groups) or eigenvector centrality (influential within a network)
- Network density: Assess the overall connectedness and potential for rapid spread to guide containment measures (lockdowns, social distancing)

Mathematical Applications in Healthcare

Biostatistics and Epidemiology

- Biostatistics: Application of statistical methods to analyze biological data and health-related information
- Epidemiology: Study of disease patterns, causes, and effects in populations

- Both fields use mathematical models to:
- Analyze health trends and risk factors
- Evaluate the effectiveness of public health interventions
- Predict disease outbreaks and plan response strategies

Medical Imaging and Diagnostics

- Mathematical algorithms support various medical imaging techniques (medical imaging)
- Image reconstruction in CT scans and MRI
- Signal processing in ultrasound imaging
- Pattern recognition for identifying abnormalities in X-rays and other diagnostic images

13.4 Math and Music

Sound and music are all about waves and numbers. From the high-pitched squeal of a flute to the deep rumble of thunder, it's all just vibrations at different frequencies. We'll explore how these frequencies shape what we hear.

Musical notes and intervals are the building blocks of music. We'll look at how notes relate to each other on a keyboard and dive into the math behind octaves. Understanding these concepts helps us appreciate the science behind the tunes we love.

Sound and Music

Frequency, pitch, and decibels in sound

- Frequency measured in Hertz (Hz) represents the number of sound wave cycles per second
- Higher frequency sound waves result in higher perceived pitch (flute vs. tuba)
- Pitch is the perceptual property of sound determined by the frequency of sound waves
- Higher pitch corresponds to higher frequency (whistle vs. thunder)
- Decibels (dB) measure sound intensity or volume using a logarithmic scale
- Every 10 dB increase represents a tenfold increase in sound intensity (jet engine vs. normal conversation)
- Doubling the sound intensity results in a 3 dB increase (two identical instruments playing together)

Wave properties and sound quality

- Wavelength is inversely proportional to frequency, affecting pitch perception
- Amplitude determines the loudness of a sound
- Timbre is the unique quality of a sound that distinguishes different instruments or voices
- Overtones are additional frequencies above the fundamental frequency that contribute to timbre
- Resonance occurs when an object vibrates in response to sound waves of a specific frequency

Musical Notes and Intervals

Note relationships on keyboards

- Half-step (semitone) is the smallest interval between two notes on a piano keyboard
- Two adjacent keys, whether white or black (C to C# or E to F)
- Whole step (whole tone) is an interval consisting of two half-steps
- Two keys with one key in between, whether white or black (C to D or F# to G#)
- Octave is the interval between two notes with a 2:1 frequency ratio
- 12 half-steps or 6 whole steps apart on a keyboard (C to the next higher or lower C)
- Notes an octave apart have the same letter name (A to A, F to F)

Frequency calculations for octaves

- Octave frequency relationship involves doubling when ascending an octave and halving when descending an octave
- If A4 (middle A) has a frequency of 440 Hz, A5 (one octave higher) has a frequency of $440 \times 2 = 880$ Hz
- A3 (one octave lower) has a frequency of $440 \div 2 = 220$ Hz
- Extending the concept, each subsequent octave doubles or halves the frequency
- A6 has a frequency of $880 \times 2 = 1760$ Hz (two octaves higher than A4)
- A2 has a frequency of $220 \div 2 = 110$ Hz (two octaves lower than A4)
- Harmonics are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency, contributing to the overall sound

Tuning systems

- Equal temperament is a tuning system that divides the octave into 12 equal parts, allowing for consistent intervals in all keys

13.5 Math and Sports

Tournament formats shape how teams compete and determine winners. From round-robin to single-elimination, each style impacts the number of games played and fairness of outcomes. Understanding these formats helps us appreciate the math behind sports competitions.

Data analytics revolutionizes sports, from player performance to injury prevention. By crunching numbers on everything from shooting percentages to biometric data, teams gain insights to improve strategies, recruit smartly, and keep athletes healthy. It's changing how we play and watch sports.

Tournament Formats and Calculations

Games in tournament formats

- Single round-robin tournaments involve each team playing every other team exactly once

- Formula for calculating the number of games in a single round-robin tournament: $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$, where n represents the number of teams
- For example, with 8 teams, there will be $\frac{8(8-1)}{2} = 28$ games in total
- Single-elimination tournaments pair teams up to play each other, with the losing team being eliminated after each round
- The number of games in a single-elimination tournament is always one less than the number of teams: $n - 1$, where n is the number of teams
- For instance, with 16 teams, there will be 15 games in total
- Round-robin tournaments have significantly more games than single-elimination tournaments for the same number of teams
- The number of games in a round-robin tournament grows quadratically (soccer league) with the number of teams, while single-elimination tournaments grow linearly (tennis grand slam)

Data Analytics in Sports

Data analytics in professional sports

- Performance analysis involves tracking and analyzing player statistics (shooting percentages, assists, turnovers) to identify strengths, weaknesses, and areas for improvement for individual players and the team as a whole
- This information is used to optimize game strategies and tactics based on data-driven insights
- Player recruitment and scouting utilize data on potential recruits' past performance, physical attributes, and playing style to evaluate their suitability for the team
- Prospects are compared to current and historical players to predict their future success
- Undervalued players who may be overlooked by other teams can be identified through data analysis
- Injury prevention and management involve monitoring player workload, fatigue, and injury risk using wearable technology (heart rate monitors) and biometric data
- Training and recovery programs are optimized to reduce the likelihood of injuries
- Injury patterns are analyzed to identify and address potential risk factors (overuse, improper technique)
- Data science techniques are employed to extract meaningful insights from large volumes of sports-related data, including player performance metrics, game statistics, and biomechanics information

Tournament Format Comparison

Round-robin vs elimination tournaments

- Round-robin tournaments have several advantages:
- Every team plays every other team, providing a more comprehensive assessment of relative strengths
- The role of luck is reduced, ensuring that the best team is more likely to win the tournament

- However, round-robin tournaments also have disadvantages:
- They require a large number of games, which can be time-consuming and expensive
- Meaningless games may occur near the end of the tournament if some teams have already secured their positions
- Single-elimination tournaments have the following advantages:
- Fewer games are required, making the tournament shorter and less expensive to organize
- Excitement and drama are created, as each game is crucial, and one loss means elimination
- Disadvantages of single-elimination tournaments include:
- A single upset or lucky result can eliminate a strong team early in the tournament
- The best team may not always win, as they could have an off day or face a difficult opponent early on
- When choosing a tournament format, consider factors such as: 1. The number of teams and available time for the tournament 2. The importance of determining the best team versus creating excitement and drama 3. Financial constraints and resources available for organizing the tournament

Advanced Analytics in Sports

- Statistics play a crucial role in evaluating player and team performance, allowing coaches and analysts to make data-driven decisions
- Probability models are used to predict outcomes of games and assess the likelihood of specific events occurring during play
- Optimization techniques are applied to various aspects of sports, including player positioning, training regimens, and resource allocation
- Game theory concepts are utilized in strategic decision-making, particularly in sports with direct opponent interactions